COUNTDOWN to SPANISH LEARN TO COMMUNICATE in 24 HOURS

• JUST ONE HOUR TO GRASP EACH SKILL
• IDEAL FOR HOME STUDY, VACATION, AND BUSINESS TRAVEL
• MASTER ESSENTIAL GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY
• BUILD SPEAKING CONFIDENCE IN MANY PRACTICAL SITUATIONS

GAIL STEIN
COUNTDOWN to SPANISH
Learn to Communicate in 24 Hours

GAIL STEIN

McGraw-Hill
New York  Chicago  San Francisco  Lisbon  London  Madrid  Mexico City  Milan  New Delhi  San Juan  Seoul  Singapore  Sydney  Toronto
This book is dedicated to:

My wonderfully patient and supportive husband, Douglas
My incredibly loving, understanding, and proud sons, Eric and Michael
My proud parents, Jack and Sara Bernstein
My creative sister and her family, Susan, Jay, and Zachary Opperman
My superior consultant and advisor, Roger H. Herz
My good friend and supporter, Christina Levy
This page intentionally left blank.
Contents

Introduction xiii

24:00 Focusing on Pronunciation 1

Master These Skills 1
Perfecting Your Pronunciation 2
Stress 2
Accents 2
Vowels 3
Diphthongs 4
Consonants 5
Having the Right Tools 9
A Final Suggestion 9
Time’s Up! 10

23:00 Recognizing and Using Nouns 11

Master These Skills 11
Gender 12
Noun Markers 12
Nouns 17
Cognates 22
Time’s Up! 26

22:00 Working with Present-Tense Verbs 27

Master These Skills 27
Subject Nouns and Pronouns 28
Regular Verbs 29
Shoe Verbs 35
Irregular Verbs 39
Uses of the Present Tense 43
The Present Progressive 44
Time’s Up! 45
CONTENTS

21:00 The Past Tense (The Preterit) 47
Master These Skills 47
Forming the Preterit 48
The Present Perfect Tense 51
The Preterit Perfect 53
The Imperfect 53
The Pluperfect 54
The Preterit Versus the Imperfect 54
Time’s Up! 57

20:00 Back to the Future:
Speaking Conditionally 59
Master These Skills 59
The Future 60
The Future Tense of Regular Verbs 60
The Future Tense of Irregular Verbs 61
The Future Perfect 62
The Conditional 63
The Perfect Conditional 64
Time’s Up! 65

19:00 Adding Adjectives and Adverbs 67
Master These Skills 67
Making Adjectives Feminine 68
Making Adjectives Plural 70
Position of Adjectives 71
Using Ser and Estar with Adjectives 74
Adverbs 77
Adjectives Versus Adverbs 77
Position of Adverbs 80
Time’s Up! 80

18:00 Making Acquaintances 81
Master These Skills 81
Greetings and Good-Byes 82
Reflexive Verbs 83
Origins 87
Nationalities 89
CONTENTS

The Family 90
Showing Possession 91
Time’s Up! 94

17:00 Fielding Invitations and Other Questions 95

Master These Skills 95
Verbs for Invitations 96
Prepositions 97
Places 100
Prepositional Pronouns 101
Extending an Invitation 102
Accepting an Invitation 103
Refusing an Invitation 103
Expressing Indecision and Indifference 104
No 104
Time’s Up! 106

16:00 Making Plans 107

Master These Skills 107
Cardinal Numbers 108
Ordinal Numbers 110
Days, Months, and Seasons 111
Dates 112
Telling Time 114
Time’s Up! 118

15:00 Using Spanish Around the Home 119

Master These Skills 119
House and Home 120
Chores 121
Stores 121
Deber (to Have to) 122
Tener Que 123
Hay Que + Infinitive 124
Understanding and Forming the Present Subjunctive 124
The Imperfect Subjunctive 129
The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive 130
Offering Encouragement 131
Time’s Up! 132
14:00 Offering Ideas and Issuing Commands

- Master These Skills
- Making Proposals
- Commands
- Getting There
- Using Idioms
- Positive Reinforcement
- Complaints
- Time’s Up!

13:00 Asking Questions

- Master These Skills
- Asking Yes/No Questions
- Information Questions
- Hay
- Asking for Directions
- Asking for a Price
- Questioning New Acquaintances
- Lack of Communication
- Time’s Up!

12:00 Answering Questions

- Master These Skills
- Answering Yes
- Answering No
- Negative Expressions
- Pero Versus Sino
- Answering Information Questions
- On the Phone
- Time’s Up!

11:00 Seeking Help

- Master These Skills
- Getting Help Anywhere
- At the Post Office
- At the Hair Salon
- At the Dry Cleaner’s
- Repairs and More Repairs
CONTENTS

At the Optician’s 169
At the Camera Shop 169
At the Jeweler’s 170
Special Services and Needs 171
Time’s Up! 172

10:00 Expressing Positive Opinions 173

Master These Skills 173
Making Suggestions 174
Leisure Activities 174
Demonstrative Pronouns 176
Object Pronouns 178
Using Accents 183
Positive Feelings 183
Using the Subjunctive to Express Emotions and Feelings 184
Time’s Up! 185

09:00 Planning Outdoor Activities 187

Master These Skills 187
Sports 188
The Weather 190
Expressing Negative Opinions 191
Expressing Indifference 191
Using the Subjunctive with Expressions of Doubt 192
Using the Subjunctive After Impersonal Expressions 192
Contrary-to-Fact Conditions 194
Sequence of Tenses of the Subjunctive 194
Time’s Up! 195

08:00 Making Comparisons 197

Master These Skills 197
Animals 198
In the Classroom 198
Comparisons of Inequality 199
Comparisons of Equality 206
The Absolute Superlative 207
Comparative and Superlative Expressions 208
The Subjunctive After Superlative Expressions 208
Time’s Up! 209
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>07:00</td>
<td>Meeting Your Needs on the Road and Elsewhere</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hotel Accommodations and Amenities</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exclamations</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Subjunctive in Third Person Commands</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Subjunctive After Conjunctions</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relative Pronouns</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06:00</td>
<td>Speaking of Food</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quantities</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nouns of Quantity</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eating Establishments</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Foods</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Table Settings</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restaurant Etiquette</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dietary Restrictions</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Problems</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05:00</td>
<td>Medical Needs</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>At the Pharmacy</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prepositional Modifiers</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parts of the Body</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medical Problems</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>At the Doctor’s</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04:00</td>
<td>Clothing Needs</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clothing</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sizes</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alterations</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problems</td>
<td>247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colors</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fabrics</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Neuter <em>Lo</em></td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patterns</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making a Purchase</td>
<td>251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getting Measured</td>
<td>251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>03:00</strong> Taking Care of Travel Needs</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the Airport</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the Train Station</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel by Car</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Passive Voice</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>02:00</strong> Managing Your Money</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the Bank</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Stock Market</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participles</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Participles</td>
<td>266</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>01:00</strong> The Language of Business</td>
<td>269</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master These Skills</td>
<td>269</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stationery Needs</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photocopies</td>
<td>270</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faxes</td>
<td>271</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computers</td>
<td>271</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conducting Business</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions Before Infinitives</td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time’s Up!</td>
<td>276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

The main premise of *Countdown to Spanish* is that you can learn this extremely useful and beautiful language quickly and effectively. If you are willing to spend just 24 hours of your time studying the grammar, vocabulary, and phrases presented in the lessons, you will find that you will be able to understand and communicate in Spanish in various types of everyday situations. You can immediately feel confident that you will meet this challenge and accomplish your goals effortlessly and rapidly.

To make the task of learning Spanish as time-efficient as possible, *Countdown to Spanish* is divided into 24 one-hour lessons. Each lesson is then subdivided into very logical and manageable parts, which will enable you to learn the material with ease and self-assurance. Just divide the lesson so that you allow an equal number of minutes for each major heading. Do not worry about memorizing all the words in every table. That would prove to be an impossible and frustrating task. Instead, use the lists for reference, along with the key phrases you memorize. Those words that are high-frequency in your vocabulary will quickly become a part of your own personal word list.

*Countdown to Spanish* is completely different from other language books. It is not a grammar text for students, yet it contains an in-depth study of all the major grammar inherent to Spanish. It is not a phrase book for travelers, yet it contains all the in-depth vocabulary you might want or need in every conceivable situation. It is, therefore, a unique combination of the two that gives you the essentials for an immediate jump start in speaking and understanding Spanish.

Unlike any other foreign language book on the market, *Countdown to Spanish* is organized into a series of tasks that speakers will find useful and adaptable in a wide variety of situations: socializing, giving and receiving information, persuasion, expressing feelings and emotions, and expressing needs. These are the elements that are necessary for anyone who wants to understand and be understood: that is, to communicate as effectively as possible. Remember that dictionaries just give you words without teaching you how to put them together to form logical, comprehensive thoughts. *Countdown to Spanish* will allow you to reach this goal.

Hours 24:00 to 19:00 present the grammar you will need to form complete, simple, and correct sentences in the past, present, or future.
tense. The differences between American and Spanish syntax and structure will be pinpointed to give you a greater understanding and command of the language. The rules you learn in these lessons can then be applied to accomplish any of the tasks in the lessons that follow. So feel free to skip around and use the knowledge you’ve acquired in any of the parts that follow, without being overly concerned about sequence.

Hours 18:00 to 16:00 give you the phrases and structures necessary to strike up a conversation and make the acquaintance of a Spanish-speaking person. You’ll learn how to extend, accept, and graciously refuse an invitation and offer apologies and excuses using the correct Spanish vocabulary and structures.

Hours 15:00 and 14:00 enable you to get someone to follow a course of action at a mutually convenient time and place. These lessons allow you to make proposals, offer suggestions, and give commands that can be used for a variety of different activities and events.

Hours 13:00 to 11:00 teach you the most effective ways to ask yes/no and information questions. In the event of a lack of communication, you’ll be prepared. You’ll also be able to properly furnish any necessary information in a quick, efficient manner. There are sections teaching you how to make a phone call and how to obtain help in securing personal services at the post office, the hair salon, the dry cleaner’s, the optician’s, the camera shop, and the jeweler’s. There’s even vocabulary for those with special needs who require special services.

Hours 10:00 to 8:00 allow you to express your positive and negative reactions and emotions, as well as your indifference and indecision towards varying activities. You’ll be using colloquial and idiomatic Spanish and grammatically correct structures to accomplish these tasks, as well as to make comparisons.

Hours 7:00 to 1:00 will help you with your hotel, food, medical, clothing, transportation, banking, and business needs by means of easy but clear-cut Spanish expressions.

The appendixes at the back of the book give essential words and phrases in Spanish, and verb charts.

The rest is up to you. If you’re really committed, you can do this! ¡Buena suerte! (boo-weh-nah soo-wehr-teh) Good luck!
Focusing on Pronunciation

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Pronunciation
- Stress
- Accents
- Vowels
- Diphthongs
- Consonants

In this chapter you’ll learn how to stress Spanish syllables and how different accents affect the sounds of the Spanish letters. You’ll also be given a key to help you properly pronounce vowels, consonants, and diphthongs.
PERFECTING YOUR PRONUNCIATION

Although your level of competence in pronouncing Spanish properly has very little bearing on your ability to be understood, you can follow some simple steps that should enable you to express yourself in a more acceptable manner. Some suggestions and tips for better pronunciation include the following:

- Relax and speak slowly. No one expects you to sound like a native.
- Slip and slide sounds together to get a more natural flow.
- Lose your inhibitions by reading aloud Spanish newspapers, magazines, and literature.
- Set aside the necessary time to practice different sounds.
- Don’t be afraid to “ham up” your accent.
- Remember to pronounce letters with accents properly.

STRESS

The rules for stress in Spanish are straightforward, but they do require your concentration at first. In general, Spanish words are pronounced exactly as they are written. Follow these simple guidelines:

- If a word ends in a vowel, an n, or an s, place the stress on the next to the last syllable, for example: escuela, inteligente, centro, joven, insectos.
- If the word ends in any letter besides those mentioned above, the stress is on the last syllable, for example: papel, comunicar, salud.
- All exceptions to the above two rules have an accent over the vowel of the stressed syllable, for example: café, lámpara, inglés, según.

The only exceptions to these rules are words of foreign origin, usually words taken from English, which keep their original spelling and pronunciation, for example: sandwich, Internet.

ACCENTS

Accent marks are small pronunciation guides that help you speak more like a native. Spanish has three different accent marks that may change the sound or stress of the letter.

The most common accent in Spanish is the acute accent (´), which is used only on a vowel and indicates that you must put additional stress on the syllable containing it:

- mamá ma-MAH
- café ka-FEH
- egoísta eh-goh-ES-tah
opinión  oh-peen-YOHN
música  MOO-see-kah

The tilde (´) is used only on the letter n (ñ), producing the sound ny as in the nio of union:

  cabáña  kah-bah-NYAH
  mañana  mah-NYAH-nah

The least common accent is known as a diéresis (¨) and is placed on a u when it is followed by another vowel. A diéresis indicates that each vowel sound is pronounced separately:

  nicaragüense  nee-kah-rah-goo-WEHN-seh
  lingüístico  leen-goo-WEES-tee-koh

VOWELS

Each vowel in Spanish is represented by one phonetic sound, and accent marks are used only to determine the amount of stress needed. After each of the following vowel explanations you will have the opportunity to practice repeating sentences that reinforce the sounds presented. Take advantage and practice your accent until you feel comfortable that you have mastered the material.

a

There is only one sound for a. Just open your mouth and say ahhhh.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a, á</td>
<td>ah</td>
<td>a as in ma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mariana is going home now with Susana’s mother.

Mariana va a su casa ahora con la mamá de Susana.


e

There is one sound for the vowel e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e, é</td>
<td>eh</td>
<td>e as in gate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enrique Estevez is the man from Chile.

Enrique Estevez es el hombre de Chile.

ehn-ree-keh ehs-teh-behs ehs ehl ohm-breh deh chee-leh

i

The i is pretty straightforward and easy to pronounce as an ee sound:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i, í</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>i as in <em>magazine</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Isidro is an Italian individual.

Isidro es un individuo italiano.

ee-see-droh ehs oon een-dee-bee-doo-woh ee-tahl-ee-yah-noh

o

Round your lips to get the o sound:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o, ó</td>
<td>oh</td>
<td>o as in <em>go</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I don’t understand it.

Yo no lo comprendo.

yoh noh loh kohm-prehn-doh

u

Say the sound oo as in *moo* when pronouncing u:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VOWEL</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u, ú</td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>oo as in <em>too</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You use a pen in a university.

Tú usas una pluma en una universidad.

too oo-sahs oo-nah ploo-mah ehn oo-nah oo-nee-behr-see-dad.

**DIPHTHONGS**

A diphthong is the combination of a vowel sound and the consonant sound of y or w into a single syllable. The sound of y is represented in Spanish by i or y, and the sound of w is represented by u.
Diphthongs with Vowel Sounds First

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIPHTHONG</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ai, ay</td>
<td>ah-ye</td>
<td>( i ) as in ( light )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei, ey</td>
<td>eh-ye</td>
<td>( e ) as in ( they )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi, oy</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>( o ) as in ( boy )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>( ow ) as in ( cow )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eu</td>
<td>eh-yoo</td>
<td>( eu ) as in ( reuse )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I hear that there are six kings and an author in Europe.

Oigo que hay seis reyes y un autor en Europa.

Diphthongs with Consonant Sounds First

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIPHTHONG</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ia, ya</td>
<td>ee-yah</td>
<td>( ya ) as is ( yarn )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie, ye</td>
<td>ee-yeh</td>
<td>( ye ) as in ( yet )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ua</td>
<td>oo-wah</td>
<td>( wa ) as in ( watch )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ue</td>
<td>oo-weh</td>
<td>( we ) as in ( wet )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io, yo</td>
<td>ee-yoh</td>
<td>( yo ) as in ( yoke )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uo</td>
<td>oo-woh</td>
<td>( (w)uo ) as in ( quote )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iu, yu</td>
<td>ee-yoo</td>
<td>( you ) as in ( you )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ui, uy</td>
<td>oo-wee</td>
<td>( wee ) as in ( week )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am serious and I study in the city when there is no noise.

Soy serio y estudio en la ciudad cuando no hay ruido.

CONSONANTS

The Spanish alphabet consists of twenty-eight letters, five of which are vowels. Three of the remaining twenty-three letters, \( ch \), \( ll \), and \( n \), do not exist in the English alphabet. (\( Ch \) and \( ll \) are no longer commonly treated as separate letters, but they do have unique pronunciations.) The letter
is used only in words of foreign origin and is not considered part of the Spanish alphabet. The following Spanish consonants should pose no problem in pronunciation because they are the same in both Spanish and English: b, d, f, k, l, m, n, p, s, t, y.

**c**
The letter c may have a soft or hard sound depending on the letter that comes after it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c before a, o, u (hard sound)</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>c as in car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c before i, e, y (soft sound)</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s as in sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>ch as in much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carlos Cepeda drives his car downtown with the check.

Carlos Cepeda conduce su coche al centro con el cheque.

kahr-lohs seh-peh-dah kohn-doo-seh soo koh-cheh ahl seh-n-troh kohn ehl cheh-keh

**g**
The letter g may have a soft or hard sound depending on the vowel(s) that comes after it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>g before a, o, u, or consonant (hard sound)</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g as in good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g before e, i (soft sound)</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>h as in he</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Geraldo and Gabriela Gómez win in the gym.

Geraldo y Gabriela Gómez ganan en el gimnasio.

heh-rahl-doh ee gah-bree-yehlah goh-mehs gah-nahn ehn ehl heem-nah-see-yoh

**h**
An h is always silent in Spanish:

Hector has a Hispanic ice cream.

Hector tiene un helado hispano.

ehk-tohr tee-yeh-neh oon eh-lah-doh ees-pah-noh
**j**
The letter *j* is pronounced like an English *h*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>h</td>
<td><em>h</em> as in <em>he</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The big young boy plays with Julio and Gerald in the garden.

El joven grande juega con Julio y Geraldo en el jardín.

ehl hoh-behn grahn-deh hoo-weh-gah kohn hoo-lee-yoh ee heh-rahl-doh ehn ehl har-deen

**ll**
The Spanish *ll* has the sound of an English *y*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>y</td>
<td><em>y</em> as in <em>you</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The llama cries slowly.

La llama llora lentamente.

lah yah-mah yoh-rah lehn-tah-mehn-teh

**ñ**
The *ñ* has almost the equivalent sound of *ni* in *union*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ñ</td>
<td>ny</td>
<td><em>ni</em> as in <em>union</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The young girl doesn’t add anything.

La niña no añade nada.

lah nee-nyah noh ah-nyah-deh nah-dah

**q**
The Spanish *q* has the sound of an English *k*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>k</td>
<td><em>k</em> as in <em>key</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perhaps you want fifteen cheeses.

Quizás quieras quince quesos.

kee-sahs kee-yeh-rahs keen-seh keh-sohs
The Spanish \( r \) is rolled or trilled. A single \( r \) receives a single tap of the tongue whereas the double \( r (rr) \), an \( r \) at the beginning of a word, and an \( r \) preceded by \( l, n, \) or \( s \) are strongly trilled (two or three tongue rolls).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r )</td>
<td>( r )</td>
<td>( r ) as in ray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( rr )</td>
<td>( rr )</td>
<td>( r ) as in rrray</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mr. Robert wants the honor of seeing Ramón and Carlota Ruiz.

El señor Roberto quiere la honra de ver a Ramón y Carlota Ruiz.

\[ \text{ehl seh-nyohhr rroh-behr-toh kee-yeh-reh lah ohn-rrah deh behr ah rrah-mohn ee kahr-loh-tah rroo-ees} \]

The Spanish \( v \) sounds like the English \( b \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( v )</td>
<td>( b )</td>
<td>( b ) as in boy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is true that Violet had a glass of wine.

Es verdad que Violeta tuvo un vaso de vino.

\[ \text{ehs behr-dahd keh bee-yoh-leh-tah too-boh oon bah-soh deh bee-noh} \]

The letter \( x \) is pronounced one way before a consonant and a different way between two vowels. In some words, it has the sound of the English \( s \):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( x ) (before a consonant)</td>
<td>( s )</td>
<td>( s ) as in see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x ) (between two vowels)</td>
<td>( gs )</td>
<td>( gs ) as in eggs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mrs. Màxima explains the sixth test.

La señora Máxima explica el sexto examen.

\[ \text{lah seh-nyoh-rah mag-see-mah ehs-plee-kah ehl sehs-toh ehg-sah-mehn} \]
The Spanish z has a soft sound:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LETTER</th>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s as in see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The blue fox is in the zoo.

El zorro azul está en el zoológico.

ehl soh-roh ah-sool ehs-tah ehn ehl soh-oh-loh-hee-koh

HAVING THE RIGHT TOOLS
A tape recorder can be an indispensable tool for language study, but also make sure that you have on hand an up-to-date, modern, clear, easy-to-use bilingual dictionary. Don’t make a hasty purchase. Ensure that you understand the abbreviations in the front of the book and that grammatical explanations are clear. Verify that modern, everyday technical and business terms are included. Check the date of publication—the world is changing so rapidly that you want to have a book that has been updated quite recently.

A FINAL SUGGESTION
Now that you are well on your way to excellent pronunciation habits, try singing along to your favorite Latin tunes. Whether you prefer oldies or something more contemporary, you will find that you can learn a lot of vocabulary and easily become accustomed to the rhythms used by native speakers.
TIME’S UP!

Now that you’ve had the opportunity to thoroughly acquaint yourself with and practice the sounds of Spanish, try reading these potentially useful phrases without the aid of any pronunciation clues. Try to avoid looking back for help.

1. Buenos días. Me llamo José Silva. ¿Cómo se llama?  
   Hello. My name is José Silva. What’s your name?

2. Hablo español (un poco).  
   I speak (a little) Spanish.

3. Perdóneme. Yo no comprendo. Hable más despacio por favor.  
   Excuse me. I don’t understand. Please speak more slowly.

4. ¿Qué dijo? Repítalo por favor.  
   What did you say? Please repeat it.

5. Quisiera cambiar mis dólares en euros por favor.  
   I would like to change my American dollars to euros please.

6. Perdóneme. ¿Dónde está la embajada americana?  
   Excuse me. Where’s the American Embassy?

7. No me siento bien. ¿Dónde está la oficina del médico más cercana?  
   I don’t feel well. Where is the office of the nearest doctor?

8. ¿Podrías ayudarme, por favor? Perdí un documento importante.  
   Could you please help me? I’ve lost an important document.

9. ¿Cuánto cuestan estos pantalones negros y estas camisas rojas?  
   How much do these black pants and red shirts cost?

    I need a spoon, a fork, and a knife. Thank you.
Recognizing and Using Nouns

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Recognizing and using noun markers
- Using nouns properly
- Making nouns plural
- Recognizing and using cognates

In this chapter you’ll learn how to differentiate between masculine and feminine nouns and how to form the plural of nouns. Cognates will be explained, and a useful, working list will be presented to allow for immediate communication.
**GENDER**

Like English, all Spanish nouns have a number: singular (one), as in *la familia*, or plural (more than one), as in *las familias*. Unlike English, however, all Spanish nouns also have a gender: masculine or feminine. In some instances, the gender of the noun is blatantly obvious: *un hombre* (a man) is masculine, whereas *una mujer* (a woman) is feminine. In other cases, the gender of a noun is not in the least bit apparent and defies all rules of common sense or logic: *una corbata* (a tie) is feminine, while *un vestido* (a dress) is masculine.

Spanish syntax and grammar require that all words in a sentence agree in number and gender with the noun or pronoun they modify. For this reason, you must learn the gender of each noun you need or deem important. Special noun endings and markers, either articles or adjectives, indicate the gender and number of Spanish nouns.

**NOUN MARKERS**

Noun markers are articles or adjectives that tell you whether a noun is singular (sing.) or plural (pl.), masculine (m.) or feminine (f.). Three of the most common markers, as shown in the following table, are definite articles expressing “the,” indefinite articles expressing “a,” “an,” “one,” or “some,” and demonstrative adjectives expressing “this,” “that,” “these,” and “those.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular Noun Markers</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MEANING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definite article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indefinite article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrative adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Plural Noun Markers</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MEANING</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definite article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indefinite article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrative adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definite Articles
The definite article *the* indicates a specific person or thing: the teacher, the house. The definite article precedes the noun that it modifies and, in Spanish, agrees with that noun in gender and number. The masculine or feminine gender of the noun is usually, but not always, easily recognizable by the noun ending: -*o* for masculine and -*a* for feminine. Plural nouns end in -*s*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masculine</th>
<th>feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el muchacho</td>
<td>la muchacha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>los muchachos</td>
<td>las muchachas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the definite article in the following instances:

- With nouns in a general or abstract sense: *El chocolate es delicioso.* (Chocolate is delicious.)
- With time of day:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Es la una.</td>
<td>It's one o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Son las siete.</td>
<td>It's seven o'clock.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- With names of languages, except immediately after *hablar, en,* and *de*:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>El español es fácil.</td>
<td>Spanish is easy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  
  But:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hablo español.</td>
<td>I speak Spanish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El libro está escrito en español.</td>
<td>The book is written in Spanish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Es un libro de español.</td>
<td>It's a Spanish book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- With parts of the body when the possessor is clear: *Cierra los ojos.* (Close your eyes.)
- With titles of rank or profession except when addressing the person:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>El doctor Rueda llega.</td>
<td>Dr. Rueda arrives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  
  But:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buenos días, Doctor Rueda.</td>
<td>Good morning, Dr. Rueda.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- With days of the week in a plural sense to express something that takes place regularly, except after the verb *ser* (to be) when expressing dates:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Los domingos descanso.</td>
<td>On Sundays I rest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
But:

Hoy es lunes. Today is Monday.

• With seasons, except that it may be omitted after *en*:

Me gusta la primavera I like spring (summer, fall, winter).
(el verano, el otoño,
el invierno).

But:

Voy a España en (el) otoño. I am going to Spain in the fall.

• With most geographical names (rivers, mountains, oceans, countries, states, and cities):

Vivo en los Estados Unidos. I live in the United States.

El Amazonas es un río. The Amazon is a river.

• Before verb infinitives used as nouns (although when the infinitive is the subject of the sentence, the definite article may be omitted):

*El* llegar temprano es bueno. (Arriving early is good.)

• Before nouns of weight or measure: *dos dólares la docena*
(two dollars a dozen)

The definite article is omitted:

• Before nouns in apposition, except where there is a family or business relationship:

Madrid, capital de España, Madrid, the capital of Spain, is a
es una ciudad maravillosa. marvelous city.

But:

Susana, la hermana de Juan, is very intelligent.

Juan, es muy inteligente.

• Before numerals expressing the numerical order of rulers: *Carlos Segundo* (Charles the Second).

The neuter definite article *lo* is used as follows:

• The neuter *lo* (used for masculine or feminine, singular or plural) precedes a masculine adjective used as a noun to express an abstract idea or a quality:
Pienso lo mismo que ellos. I think the same as they do.
Lo caro no es siempre mejor que lo barato. Expensive is not always better than inexpensive.

- *Lo* + adjective (or adverb) + *que* = how

Ya veo lo peligroso que es. I see how dangerous it is.
¿Escuchas lo rápidamente que él habla? Do you hear how fast he speaks?

**Indefinite Articles**
The indefinite article refers to persons and objects not specifically identified: a dog, some cats. The indefinite article also precedes the noun that it modifies and must agree with that noun in gender and number:

- un muchacho a boy
- una muchacha a girl
- unos muchachos some boys
- unas muchachas some girls

Omit the indefinite article in these situations:

- Before nouns showing a class or group (occupation, nationality, religion, etc.) unless the noun is modified:
  - Soy profesora. I’m a teacher.
  - Es americana. She’s (an) American.
  - Soy una buena profesora. I’m a good teacher.
  - Es una americana importante. She’s an important American.

- Before or after certain words that generally have the article in English:
  - otro día another day
  - cierto hombre a certain man
  - cien libros a hundred books
  - mil dólares a thousand dollars
  - tal mujer such a woman
  - ¡Qué lástima! What a pity!
Demonstrative Adjectives
Demonstrative adjectives indicate or point out the person, place, or thing referred to: this girl, that country, these people, those pens. A demonstrative adjective precedes the noun that it modifies and agrees with that noun in gender and number.

In Spanish, the demonstrative adjective is selected according to how near or directly concerned the noun is to the speaker and the person addressed in the conversation.

\textit{Este/esta} (this) and \textit{estos/estas} (these) refer to nouns that are close to and directly concern the speaker:

\begin{tabular}{llll}
este muchacho & this boy & esta muchacha & this girl \\
estos muchachos & these boys & estas muchachas & these girls \\
\end{tabular}

\textit{Ese/esa} (that) and \textit{esos/esas} (those) refer to nouns that are not near or directly concerned with the speaker or the person being addressed:

\begin{tabular}{llll}
eso muchacho & that boy & esa muchacha & that girl \\
esos muchachos & those boys & esas muchachas & those girls \\
\end{tabular}

\textit{Aquel/aquella} (that) and \textit{aquellos/aquellas} (those) refer to things that are quite far from or do not directly concern either the speaker or the person being addressed:

\begin{tabular}{llll}
aquel muchacho & that boy & aquella muchacha & that girl \\
aquellos muchachos & those boys & aquellas muchachas & those girls \\
\end{tabular}

Demonstrative adjectives may be reinforced by using corresponding adverbs that show location:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE} & \textbf{ADVERB} & \textbf{MEANING} \\
\hline
este, esta, estos, estas & aquí & here \\
eso, esa, esos, esas & ahí & there (but not too far) \\
aquel, aquella, aquellos, aquellas & allá & over there (rather far) \\
este libro aquí & this book here \\
esa pluma ahí & that pen there \\
aquellos lápices allá & those pencils over there \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
NOUNS

A noun is a word used to name a person, place, thing, idea, or quality. All Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine and the gender of most of them can be determined by their meaning or ending. Most masculine nouns end in -o, while most feminine nouns end in -a. A few nouns must be learned on an individual basis.

Gender-Obvious Nouns

Nouns that refer to males are obviously masculine. Refer to this list for common nouns you’ll see:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abuelo</td>
<td>ah-boo-weh-loh</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hijo</td>
<td>ee-hoh</td>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hombre</td>
<td>ohm-breh</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muchacho</td>
<td>moo-chah-choh</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niño</td>
<td>nee-nyoh</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>padre</td>
<td>pah-dreh</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobrino</td>
<td>soh-bree-noh</td>
<td>nephew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tío</td>
<td>tee-yoh</td>
<td>uncle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns that refer to females are obviously feminine. Refer to the table below for the female counterparts of the males listed above:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abuela</td>
<td>ah-boo-weh-lah</td>
<td>grandmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chica</td>
<td>chee-kah</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hija</td>
<td>ee-hah</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madre</td>
<td>mah-dreh</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muchacha</td>
<td>moo-chah-chah</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mujer</td>
<td>moo-hehr</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobrina</td>
<td>soh-bree-nah</td>
<td>niece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tía</td>
<td>tee-yah</td>
<td>aunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some nouns can be either masculine or feminine depending upon whom you are speaking about. Make sure to use the gender marker that identifies the person correctly. The following list of words may be used to refer to both males and females.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artista</td>
<td>ahr-tees-tah</td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentista</td>
<td>dehn-tees-tah</td>
<td>dentist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estudiante</td>
<td>ehs-too-dee-yahn-teh</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joven</td>
<td>hoh-behn</td>
<td>youth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turista</td>
<td>too-rees-tah</td>
<td>tourist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

El artista es talentoso. The (male) artist is gifted.
La artista es talentosa. The (female) artist is gifted.

Some high-frequency words are always masculine or feminine despite the gender of the person referred to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un bebé</td>
<td>oon beh-beh</td>
<td>an infant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una persona</td>
<td>oo-nah pehr-soh-nah</td>
<td>a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una víctima</td>
<td>oo-nah beek-tee-mah</td>
<td>a victim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gender-Changing Singular Nouns**

Changing the gender of a noun can be as easy as removing the *o* ending for the masculine form and substituting an *a* to get the feminine form as shown here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amigo (ah-mee-goh)</td>
<td>amiga (ah-mee-gah)</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maestro (mah-yehs-troh)</td>
<td>maestra (mah-yehs-trah)</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nieto (nee-yeh-toh)</td>
<td>nieta (nee-yeh-tah)</td>
<td>grandchild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niño (nee-nyoh)</td>
<td>niña (nee-nyah)</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primo (pree-moh)</td>
<td>prima (pree-mah)</td>
<td>cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vecino (beh-see-noh)</td>
<td>vecina (beh-see-nah)</td>
<td>neighbor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some nouns may be masculine or feminine depending upon their meaning as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el capital (money)</td>
<td>la capital (of a city)</td>
<td>kah-pee-tahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el cura (priest)</td>
<td>la cura (cure)</td>
<td>koo-rah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gender Endings

Some nouns that end in -o are feminine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>la mano</td>
<td>lah mah-noh</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la radio</td>
<td>lah rrah-dee-yo</td>
<td>radio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some nouns that end in -a are masculine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el clima</td>
<td>ehl klee-mah</td>
<td>climate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el día</td>
<td>ehl dee-yah</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el drama</td>
<td>ehl drah-mah</td>
<td>drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el idioma</td>
<td>ehl ee-dee-yoh-mah</td>
<td>language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el mapa</td>
<td>ehl mah-pah</td>
<td>map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el planeta</td>
<td>ehl plah-neh-tah</td>
<td>planet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el problema</td>
<td>ehl proh-bleh-mah</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el programa</td>
<td>ehl proh-grah-mah</td>
<td>program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el tema</td>
<td>ehl teh-mah</td>
<td>theme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el telegrama</td>
<td>ehl teh-leh-grah-mah</td>
<td>telegram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some noun endings are normally feminine:

- -dad: la ciudad, city
- -tad: la dificultad, difficulty
- -tud: la juventud, youth
- -umbre: la costumbre, custom
- -ie: la serie, series
- -ión: la canción, song

Two exceptions to -ión are avión (ah-bee-yohn) airplane, and camión (kah-mee-yohn) truck.

For masculine nouns referring to people and ending in -or, -és, or -n, add an a for the feminine equivalents:
MASCULINE  FEMININE  MEANING
el profesor  la profesora  teacher
(ehl proh-feh-sohr)  (lah proh-feh-soh-rah)
el francés  la francesa  French person
(ehl frahn-sehs)  (lah frahn-seh-sah)
el alemán  la alemana  German person
(ehl ah-leh-mahn)  (lah ah-leh-mah-nah)

Note that if the masculine noun is accented on the last syllable, the accent is dropped for the feminine form. Two exceptions to this rule are:

el emperador  la emperatriz  emperor, empress
(ehl ehm-peh-rah-dohr)  (lah ehm-peh-rah-trees)
el actor (ehl ahk-tohr)  la actriz (lah ahk-trees)  actor, actress

Making Nouns Plural
Just as in English, when a Spanish noun refers to more than one person, place, thing, idea, or quality, the noun must be made plural. Unlike English, however, it is not enough to simply change the noun; the marker must be made plural as well.

Spanish nouns ending in a vowel add a pronounced -s to form the plural:

- el muchacho (the boy)  los muchachos  (the boys)
- una amiga (a friend)  unas amigas  (some friends)
- este hombre (this man)  estos hombres  (these men)
- esa niña (that girl)  esas niñas (those girls)  (eh-sahs nee-nyahs)
- aquel libro (that book)  aquellos libros  (those books)

Spanish nouns ending in a consonant (including y) add pronounced -es (ehs) to form the plural:

- el papel (paper)  los papeles  (lohs pah-peek-lehs)
- el mes (month)  los meses  (lohs meh-sehs)
- el actor (actor)  los actores  (lohs ahk-toh-rehs)
- la ley (law)  las leyes  (lahs leh-yehs)
Spanish nouns undergo the following changes in the plural:

- Nouns ending in -z change -z to -ce before adding -es:
  el lápiz (pencil)  los lápices  lohs lah-pee-sehs
  la actriz (actress)  las actrices  lahs ahk-tree-sehs
  el pez (fish)  los peces  lohs peh-sehs

- In order to preserve the original stress of the noun, you may need to add or delete an accent mark:
  el joven (youth)  los jóvenes  lohs hoh-beh-nehs
  el examen (test)  los exámenes  lohs ehs-gah-meh-nehs
  el francés (Frenchman)  los franceses  lohs frahn-seh-sehs
  la canción (song)  las canciones  lahs kahn-see-yoh-nehs

- Nouns ending in -s, except for those ending in éés, do not change in the plural:
  el (los) jueves  ehl (lohs) hoo-weh-behs  Thursday(s)
  la (las) dosis  lah (lahs) doh-sees  dose(s)

- In cases where there is a group of nouns from both genders, the masculine plural form of the noun is used:
  el padre y la madre = los padres (the parents)
  el niño y la niña = los niños (the children)
  el señor y la señora Ruiz = los señores Ruiz (the Ruizes)

Some nouns in Spanish are always plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eyeglasses</td>
<td>las gafas</td>
<td>lahs gah-fahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>los espejuelos</td>
<td>lohs ehs-peh-hoo-whelohs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mathematics</td>
<td>las matemáticas</td>
<td>lahs mah-teh-mah-tee-kahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>las vacaciones</td>
<td>lahs bah-kah-see-yoh-nehs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some nouns are singular but refer to a group of people. Make sure to use a singular verb that agrees with these subjects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el equipo</td>
<td>ehl eh-kee-poh</td>
<td>team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la familia</td>
<td>lah fah-meel-yah</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la gente</td>
<td>lah hehn-teh</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el grupo</td>
<td>ehl groo-poh</td>
<td>group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la pareja</td>
<td>lah pah-reh-hah</td>
<td>couple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el público</td>
<td>ehl poo-blee-koh</td>
<td>audience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>todo el mundo</td>
<td>toh-doh ehl moon-doh</td>
<td>everybody</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A note about regionalisms: Do not be surprised when traveling in certain regions or countries that the final -s of a plural word is not pronounced. You can still tell that the noun is plural by paying careful attention to the marker that accompanies it. This marker will also tell you whether the noun is masculine or feminine.

COGNATES

A cognate is a Spanish word that is spelled exactly the same, or almost the same, as a word in English and that has the same meaning. Sometimes the English word may have been appropriated from Spanish, letter for letter, and have been incorporated into our own vocabulary. The only real difference between the two words is in the pronunciation. The meanings of the Spanish cognates should be quite obvious to anyone who speaks English.

Perfect Cognates

Following is a list of some cognates that are the same in Spanish and English. Take time to compare the different pronunciations.

**Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artificial</td>
<td>ahr-tee-fee-see-yahl</td>
<td>sociable</td>
<td>soh-see-yah-bleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruel</td>
<td>kroo-ehl</td>
<td>tropical</td>
<td>troh-pee-kahl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
<td>poh-poo-lahr</td>
<td>usual</td>
<td>oo-soo-wahl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Masculine Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actor</td>
<td>ahk-tohr</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>choh-koh-lah-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>ah-nee-mahl</td>
<td>mosquito</td>
<td>mohs-kee-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cereal</td>
<td>seh-reh-yahl</td>
<td>taxi</td>
<td>tahk-see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Feminine Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alpaca</td>
<td>ahl-pah-kah</td>
<td>plaza</td>
<td>plah-sah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banana</td>
<td>bah-nah-nah</td>
<td>radio</td>
<td>rrah-dee-yoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llama</td>
<td>yah-mah</td>
<td>soda</td>
<td>soh-dah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Near Perfect Cognates

The following table lists the cognates that are nearly the same in both Spanish and English.

### Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>americano</td>
<td>ah-meh-ree-kah-noh</td>
<td>imposible</td>
<td>eem-poh-see-bleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicioso</td>
<td>deh-lee-see-yoh-soh</td>
<td>inteligente</td>
<td>een-teh-lee-hehn-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diferente</td>
<td>dee-feh-rehn-teh</td>
<td>interesante</td>
<td>een-teh-reh-sahn-teh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excelente</td>
<td>eh-seh-lehn-teh</td>
<td>moderno</td>
<td>moh-der-noh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famoso</td>
<td>fah-moh-soh</td>
<td>necesario</td>
<td>neh-seh-sah-ree-yoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>grahn-deh</td>
<td>posible</td>
<td>poh-see-bleh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importante</td>
<td>eem-pohr-tahn-teh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Masculine Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apartamento</td>
<td>ah-pahr-tah-mehn-toh</td>
<td>diccionario</td>
<td>deek-see-yoh-nah-rey-yoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automóvil</td>
<td>ow-toh-moh-beel</td>
<td>garaje</td>
<td>gah-rah-heh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>café</td>
<td>kah-feh</td>
<td>grupo</td>
<td>groo-poh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calendario</td>
<td>kah-lehn-dah-ree-yoh</td>
<td>insecto</td>
<td>een-sehk-toh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
plato  plah-toh  restaurante  rrhee-tow-rahn-teh
profesor  proh-feh-sohr  tigre  tee-greh

Feminine Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aspirina</td>
<td>ahs-pee-ree-nah</td>
<td>gasolina</td>
<td>gah-soh-lee-nah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicicleta</td>
<td>bee-see-kleh-tah</td>
<td>hamburguesa</td>
<td>ahm-boor-geh-sah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blusa</td>
<td>bloo-sah</td>
<td>medicina</td>
<td>meh-dee-see-nah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computadora</td>
<td>kohm-poo-tah-doh-rah</td>
<td>musica</td>
<td>moo-see-kah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dieta</td>
<td>dee-yeh-tah</td>
<td>persona</td>
<td>pehr-soh-nah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familia</td>
<td>fah-mee-lee-yah</td>
<td>rosa</td>
<td>rrho-sah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

False Friends

False friends are words that are spelled exactly or almost the same in both languages but have very different meanings in Spanish and English. These words might even be different parts of speech. Do not allow yourself to become overconfident and think that every Spanish word that resembles an English one is automatically a cognate. The following table will give you some common false friends.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asistir</td>
<td>ah-sees-teer</td>
<td>to attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caro</td>
<td>kah-roh</td>
<td>expensive, dear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comer</td>
<td>koh-mehr</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fábrica</td>
<td>fah-bree-kah</td>
<td>factory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flor</td>
<td>flohr</td>
<td>flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hay</td>
<td>ah-yee</td>
<td>there is, are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>librería</td>
<td>lee-breh-ree-yah</td>
<td>bookstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joya</td>
<td>hoh-yah</td>
<td>jewel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mano</td>
<td>mah-noh</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pan</td>
<td>pahn</td>
<td>bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sopa</td>
<td>soh-pah</td>
<td>soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaso</td>
<td>bah-soh</td>
<td>glass</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When in doubt about the meaning of a word, always verify by using a bilingual dictionary. Make sure to look at the part of speech so that you don’t confuse a noun with a verb, adjective, or adverb. Cross-check by looking up the word on both the Spanish and English sides of the dictionary.

You can easily guess the meaning of many Spanish words that begin with -e by simply dropping the initial e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>escena</td>
<td>eh-seh-nah</td>
<td>scene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>España</td>
<td>ehs-pah-nyah</td>
<td>Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>especial</td>
<td>ehs-peh-see-yahl</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espectáculo</td>
<td>ehs-pehk-tah-koo-loh</td>
<td>spectacle, show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>espía</td>
<td>ehs-pee-yah</td>
<td>spy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esquí</td>
<td>ehs-kee</td>
<td>ski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estupendo</td>
<td>ehs-too-pehn-doh</td>
<td>stupendous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TIME’S UP!

Here is a two-part exercise to find out how you have assimilated what you’ve learned about nouns during the last hour. Try your best not to look back at the chapter to arrive at your answers.

**Part I**
Change the markers and plural nouns to their singular forms.

1. los bancos
2. esos platos
3. estas catedrales
4. las flores
5. aquellos hombres

**Part II**
Change the feminine markers and nouns to their masculine counterparts.

6. una amiga
7. esa francesa
8. la actriz
9. esta policía
10. aquella profesora
Working with Present-Tense Verbs

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Subject nouns and pronouns
- Conjugating -ar verbs
- Conjugating -er and -ir verbs
- Using shoe verbs properly
- Conjugating spelling-change and irregular yo verbs
- Conjugating other irregular verbs
- Speaking in the present

In this chapter you will learn how to conjugate verbs in the present tense so that they agree with their subject noun or pronoun. By the end of the lesson you will be able to speak, read, and write entire sentences in Spanish.
SUBJECT NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

A pronoun is a word that is used to replace a noun (that is, a person, place, thing, idea, or quality). A subject pronoun replaces a subject noun (the noun performing the action of the verb). Pronouns are extremely useful because they allow for fluidity by eliminating the need to constantly repeat the noun when speaking or writing.

Just as in English, the Spanish subject pronouns in the following table are given a person and a number (singular or plural).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSON</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>nosotros(as)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>tú</td>
<td>vosotros(as)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>él</td>
<td>ellos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ella</td>
<td>ellas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ud.</td>
<td>Uds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following about Spanish subject pronouns:

- In Spanish, subject pronouns are used far less frequently than in English because the verb ending usually indicates the speaker. Spanish speakers, however, generally use the pronouns usted (abbreviated as Ud.; formal you, singular) and ustedes (abbreviated as Uds.; formal you, plural) to clarify that the subject is not él or ella. All other subject pronouns in Spanish are used mainly for clarity, emphasis, and politeness.
- Unlike the English pronoun I, the pronoun yo is capitalized only when it begins a sentence. In all other instances, it remains in lower case.
- The pronouns nosotros, vosotros, and ellas are used when the subjects are all females. When the subject consists of a mixed group, the masculine plural pronoun is always used.

  Elena y Roberto salen. Elena and Roberto are going out.
  Ellos salen. They are going out.

- The English pronoun it has no Spanish equivalent and is not expressed as a subject: ¿Dónde está? (Where is it?)
- The subject pronoun tú is used to address one friend, relative, child, or pet. For this reason, it is referred to as the familiar or informal form of you. The subject pronoun vosotros(as) is used in Spain and a few countries in Latin America. It is used in the plural to show familiarity, and as such, is the plural of the tú, singular familiar (informal) form.
REGULAR VERBS

A verb expresses an action or state of being and is generally shown in its infinitive, the basic “to” form: to live, to laugh, to love. An infinitive is the form of the verb before it has been conjugated. Conjugation refers to changing the ending of the verb so that it agrees with the subject noun or pronoun. Although we do this automatically in English, it will take some thought and practice in Spanish until verb endings and patterns become second nature.

Here is an example of a verb conjugated in English:

*to speak*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Person</td>
<td>I speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Person</td>
<td>You speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Person</td>
<td>He speaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She speaks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the verb is rather simple and is written in only two ways. In Spanish, you need to know more ways to write the verb and you need to memorize more verb endings.

Keep in mind that, as in English, you cannot mix and match subjects and verb forms; each subject has its own personalized matching verb form that never changes.

Conjugating Regular Verbs

Spanish has regular verbs that are grouped into three main families: -ar, -er, and -ir verbs. The families are so named because the verb infinitives end in -ar, -er, or -ir. Each verb within its respective family follows the same rules of conjugation. After you’ve learned the pattern for one family, you know all the verbs within that family. This rule applies regardless of the tense being used.

Tense refers to the time period when the action is taking place. This chapter concentrates on the present tense, that is, what happens here and now.

Conjugating -ar Verbs. The -ar family is, by far, the largest and most widely used of regular verb families. To form the present tense of -ar verbs, drop the -ar from the infinitive and add the following endings, indicated in bold, for the subject pronouns listed. The following table gives the conjugation for the verb *hablar* (to speak).
Another possible meaning for all present tense verbs uses a form of the word *do* plus the verb: I do speak. She does speak.

You should now be able to conjugate the common -ar verbs given in the list below. Take note of all the cognates, marked with an asterisk (*), which will make communication in Spanish a much easier task.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>acompañar</em></td>
<td>ah-kohm-pah-nyahr</td>
<td>to accompany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adorar</em></td>
<td>ah-doh-rah</td>
<td>to adore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alimentar</td>
<td>ah-lee-mehn-tahr</td>
<td>to feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alquilar</td>
<td>ahl-kee-lahr</td>
<td>to rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>anunciar</em></td>
<td>ah-noon-see-yahr</td>
<td>to announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apagar</td>
<td>ah-pah-gahr</td>
<td>to turn off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arreglar</td>
<td>ah-rreh-glahr</td>
<td>to fix, adjust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aterrizar</td>
<td>ah-teh-ree-sahr</td>
<td>to land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avisar</td>
<td>ah-bee-sahr</td>
<td>to warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayudar</td>
<td>ah-yoo-dahr</td>
<td>to help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bailar</td>
<td>bah-yee-lahr</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bajar</td>
<td>bah-hahr</td>
<td>to go down, get off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buscar</td>
<td>boos-kahr</td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cambiar</td>
<td>kahm-bee-yahr</td>
<td>to change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish Word</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caminar</td>
<td>kah-mee-nahr</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cantar</td>
<td>kahn-tahr</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cobrar</td>
<td>koh-brahr</td>
<td>to cash, charge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comprar</td>
<td>kohm-prahr</td>
<td>to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contestar</td>
<td>kohn-tehs-tahr</td>
<td>to answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortar</td>
<td>kohr-tahr</td>
<td>to cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruzar</td>
<td>kroo-sahr</td>
<td>to cross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dejar</td>
<td>deh-hahr</td>
<td>to let, allow, leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desear</td>
<td>deh-seh-yahr</td>
<td>to desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durar</td>
<td>doo-rahr</td>
<td>to last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enseñar</td>
<td>ehn-seh-nyahr</td>
<td>to teach, show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*entrar</td>
<td>ehn-trahr</td>
<td>to enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escuchar</td>
<td>ehs-koo-chahr</td>
<td>to listen (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esperar</td>
<td>ehs-peh-rahr</td>
<td>to hope, wait for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*estudiar</td>
<td>ehs-too-dee-yahr</td>
<td>to study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evitar</td>
<td>eh-bee-tahr</td>
<td>to avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*explicar</td>
<td>eh-splee-kahr</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*expresar</td>
<td>eh-spreh-sahr</td>
<td>to express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firmar</td>
<td>feer-mahr</td>
<td>to sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganar</td>
<td>gah-nahr</td>
<td>to win, earn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gastar</td>
<td>gahs-tahr</td>
<td>to spend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guardar</td>
<td>gwahr-dahr</td>
<td>to watch, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hablar</td>
<td>ah-blahr</td>
<td>to speak, talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hallar</td>
<td>ah-yahr</td>
<td>to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*invitar</td>
<td>een-bee-tahr</td>
<td>to invite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lavar</td>
<td>lah-bahr</td>
<td>to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llegar</td>
<td>yeh-gahr</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llenar</td>
<td>yeh-nahr</td>
<td>to fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llevar</td>
<td>yeh-bahr</td>
<td>to wear, carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mandar  mahn-dahr  to order
mirar   mee-rahr  to look at
montar  mohn-tahr to go up, ride
nadar   nah-dahr  to swim
necesitar  neh-seh-see-tahr  to need
olvidar  ohl-bee-dahr  to forget
pagar   pah-gahr  to pay
pasar   pah-sahr  to spend (time)
*practicar  prahk-tee-kahr  to practice
preguntar  preh-goon-tahr  to ask
*preparar  preh-pah-rah  to prepare
*presentar  preh-sehn-tahr  to introduce
prestar  prehs-tahr  to lend
regresar  rreh-greh-sahr  to return
*reparar  rreh-pah-rah  to repair
*reservar  rreh-sehr-bahr  to reserve
saludar  sah-loo-dahr  to greet
*telefonear  teh-leh-foh-neh-yahr  to phone
*terminar  tehr-mee-nahr  to end
tirar   tee-rahr  to throw
tocar   toh-kahr  to touch, play
       (an instrument)
tomar   toh-mahr  to drink, take
*usar    oo-sahr  to use, wear
viajar  bee-yah-hahr  to travel
*visitar  bee-see-tahr  to visit

Conjugating -er Verbs. The -er verb family is much smaller than the -ar verb family. To form the present tense of -er verbs, drop the -er from the infinitive and add the following endings, indicated in bold, for the subject pronouns listed. The following table shows you how the verb comer (to eat) looks when it is conjugated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo como</td>
<td>yoh koh-moh</td>
<td>I eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú comes</td>
<td>too koh-mehs</td>
<td>you eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él come</td>
<td>ehl koh-meh</td>
<td>he eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ella come</td>
<td>eh-yah koh-meh</td>
<td>she eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ud. come</td>
<td>oo-stehd koh-meh</td>
<td>you eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros comemos</td>
<td>noh-soh-trohs koh-meh-mohs</td>
<td>we eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros coméis</td>
<td>boh-soh-trohs koh-meh-yees</td>
<td>you eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos comen</td>
<td>eh-yohs koh-mehn</td>
<td>they eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellas comen</td>
<td>eh-yahs koh-mehn</td>
<td>they eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uds. comen</td>
<td>oo-steh-dehs koh-mehn</td>
<td>you eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a list of common -er verbs that you should know. Notice that this list is much smaller than the one for -ar verbs. The asterisk (*) indicates easily recognizable cognates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aprender</td>
<td>ah-prehn-dehr</td>
<td>to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beber</td>
<td>beh-behr</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comer</td>
<td>koh-mehr</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*comprender</td>
<td>kohm-prehn-dehr</td>
<td>to comprehend, understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correr</td>
<td>koh-rrehr</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creer</td>
<td>kreh-yehr</td>
<td>to believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deber</td>
<td>deh-behr</td>
<td>to have to, owe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leer</td>
<td>leh-yehr</td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*prometer</td>
<td>proh-meh-tehr</td>
<td>to promise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*responder</td>
<td>rrrehs-pohn-dehr</td>
<td>to respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vender</td>
<td>behn-dehr</td>
<td>to sell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conjugating -ir Verbs.** The -ir verb family is also quite small. To form the present tense of -ir verbs, drop the -ir from the infinitive and add the endings, indicated in bold, for the subject pronouns listed. The following table shows how the verb abrir (to open) looks when it is conjugated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo abro</td>
<td>yoh ah-broh</td>
<td>I open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú abres</td>
<td>too ah-brehs</td>
<td>you open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él abre</td>
<td>ehl ah-breh</td>
<td>he opens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ella abre</td>
<td>eh-yah ah-breh</td>
<td>she opens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ud. abre</td>
<td>oo-stehd ah-breh</td>
<td>you open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros abrimos</td>
<td>noh-soh-trohs ah-bree-mohs</td>
<td>we open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros abris</td>
<td>boh-soh-trohs ah-brees</td>
<td>you open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos abren</td>
<td>eh-yohs ah-brehn</td>
<td>they open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellas abren</td>
<td>eh-yahs ah-brehn</td>
<td>they open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uds. abren</td>
<td>oo-steh-dehs ah-brehn</td>
<td>you open</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See the list below for common -ir verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abrir</td>
<td>ah-breer</td>
<td>to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asistir</td>
<td>ah-sees-teer</td>
<td>to attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*aplaudir</td>
<td>ah-plow-deer</td>
<td>to applaud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubrir</td>
<td>koo-breer</td>
<td>to cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*decidir</td>
<td>deh-see-deer</td>
<td>to decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*describir</td>
<td>dehs-kree-beer</td>
<td>to describe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escribir</td>
<td>ehs-kree-beer</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*omitir</td>
<td>oh-mee-teer</td>
<td>to omit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partir</td>
<td>pahr-teer</td>
<td>to divide, share</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recibir</td>
<td>rreh-see-beer</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subir</td>
<td>soo-beer</td>
<td>to go up, climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sufrir</td>
<td>soo-freer</td>
<td>to suffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivir</td>
<td>bee-beer</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that -er and -ir verbs have the same endings except for the nosotros and vosotros forms, where -er verbs use an e and -ir verbs use an i.
SHOE VERBS

Verbs with certain spelling changes and irregularities are referred to as shoe verbs because the subject pronouns that follow one set of rules can be placed inside the shoe, and the other subject pronouns remain outside the shoe. To make this clearer, look at the pronouns that go inside and outside of the shoe:

The infinitives of shoe verbs are often written with the type of change necessary in parentheses, as in pensar (ie).

Verbs Ending in -ar and -er. The vowel within the stem of the verb changes as follows:

- e to ie in all forms except for nosotros and vosotros
- o to ue in all forms except for nosotros and vosotros

**pensar (pehn-sahr)—to think**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Infinitive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>pienso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>piensas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>piensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>pensamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>pensáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
<td>piensan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other verbs like pensar are atravesar (ah-trah-beh-sahr) to cross, cerrar (seh-rrahr) to close, *comenzar (koh-mehn-sahr), *confesar (kohn-feh-sahr), empezar (ehm-peh-sahr) to begin, and recordar (reh-kohr-dahr) to remember.

**querer (keh-rehr)—to wish, want**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Infinitive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>quiero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>quieres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>quiere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>queremos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>queréis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
<td>quieren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other verbs like *querer* are *ascender* (ah-sehn-dehr), *defender* (deh-fehn-dehr), *descender* (deh-sehn-dehr), *entender* (ehn-tehn-dehr) to understand, and *perder* (pehr-dehr) to lose.

**encontrar** (ehn-kohn-trahr)—to meet, find

- yo encuentro
- tú encuentras
- él, ella, Ud. encuentra

Other verbs like *encontrar* are *almorzar* (ahl-mohr-sahr) to eat lunch, *contar* (kohn-tahr) to tell or count, and *mostrar* (mohs-trahr) to show.

**volver** (bohl-behr)—to return, go back

- yo vuelvo
- tú vuelves
- él, ella, Ud. vuelve

Other verbs like *volver* are *devolver* (deh-bohl-behr) to return or give back, *poder* (poh-dehr) to be able to, and *resolver* (rreh-sohl-behr).

While we have studied verbs where *o* changes to *ue* within the shoe, there is one slightly irregular verb, the verb *jugar* (hoo-gahr) to play, where *u* changes to *ue* in all forms except *nosotros* and *vosotros*:

**jugar** (hoo-gahr)—to play

- yo juego
- tú juegos
- él, ella, Ud. juega

Verbs Ending in *-ir*. The vowel within the stem of the verb changes as follows in all forms except *nosotros* and *vosotros*:

- *e* to *ie*
- *o* to *ue*
- *e* to *i*

**preferir** (preh-feh-reer)—to prefer

- yo prefiero
- tú prefieres
- él, ella, Ud. prefiere
Other verbs like preferir are advertir (ahd-behr-teer) to notify, *consentir (kohn-sehn-teer), mentir (mehn-teer) to lie, *referir (rreh-feh-reer), and sentir (sehn-teer) to feel, regret, or feel sorry.

**dormir** (dohr-meer)—to sleep

- yo dueermo
- tú duermes
- él, ella, Ud. duerme

Another verb like dormir is morir (moh-reer) to die.

**servir** (sehr-beer)—to serve

- yo sirvo
- tú sirves
- él, ella, Ud. sirve

Other verbs like servir are gemir (heh-meer) to moan, *impedir (eem-peh-deer), medir (meh-deer) to measure, pedir (peh-deer) to ask, and *repetir (rreh-peh-teer).

**Verbs Ending in -uir.** For verbs ending in -uir, except those ending in -guir, insert a y after the u in all forms except nosotros and vosotros.

**contribuir** (kohn-tree-boo-weer)—to contribute

- yo contribuyo
- tú contribuyes
- él, ella, Ud. contribuye

Other verbs like contribuir include concluir (kohn-kloo-weer) to conclude, construir (kohn-stroo-weer) to construct, destruir (deh-stroo-weer) to destroy, incluir (een-kloo-weer) to include, and sustituir (soo-stee-too-weer) to substitute.

**Verbs Ending in -iar and -uar.** Some verbs ending in -iar and -uar require an accent on the i or u respectively, in all forms except nosotros and vosotros.
**Enviar** (ehn-bee-yahr)—to send

- yo envío
- tú envías
- él, ella, Ud. envía

**Nosotros** enviamos

- vosotros enviáis

- ellos, ellas, Uds. envían

Other verbs like *Enviar* are *confiar en* (kohn-fee-yahr ehn) to trust, *espiar* (ehs-pee-yahr) to spy, *guiar* (gee-yahr) to guide, and *variar* (bah-ree-yahr).

**Actuar** (ahk-too-wahr)—to act

- yo actúo
- tú actúas
- él, ella, Ud. actúa

**Nosotros** actuamos

- vosotros actuáis

- ellos, ellas, Uds. actúan

Another verb like *Actuar* is *continuar* (kohn-tee-noo-wahr).

**Conjugating Spelling-Change and Irregular Yo Verbs**

Some verbs in Spanish require a spelling change in order to preserve correct pronunciation according to the rules of the language. Note the changes that occur in verbs with these endings:

- **Verbs ending in consonant + -cer or -cir**: change *c* to *z* before *o* or *a*:
  - convencer (kohn-behn-sehr) to convince: yo convenzo
  - esparcir (eh-spar-seer) to spread: yo esparzo

- **Verbs ending in vowel + -cer or -cir**: change *c* to *zc* before *o* or *a*:
  - conocer (koh-noh-sehr) to know: yo conozco
  - conducir (kohn-doo-seer) to drive: yo conduzco

- **Verbs ending in -ger or -gir**: change *g* to *j* before *o* or *a*:
  - coger (koh-hehr) to seize: yo cojo
  - dirigir (dee-ree-heer) to direct: yo dirijo
  - escoger (ehs-koh-hehr) to choose: yo escojo
  - exigir (ehg-see-heer) to demand: yo exijo
  - fingir (feen-heer) to pretend: yo finjo
  - proteger (proh-teh-heer) to protect: yo protejo
  - recoger (rreh-koh-hehr) to pick up: yo recojo
• Verbs ending in -guir change gu to g before o or a:
  
distinguir (dees-teen-geer) to distinguish: yo distingo

The verb seguir (seh-geer) to follow or continue, is a common verb that
has a stem change and a spelling change:

  yo sigo
  tú sigues
  él, ella, Ud. sigue

  nosotros seguimos
  vosotros seguís
  ellos, ellas, Uds. siguen

Other verbs like seguir are conseguir (kohn-seh-geer) to obtain, perseguir
(pehr-seh-geer) to pursue, and proseguir (proh-seh-geer) to continue.

**IRREGULAR VERBS**
A good number of high-frequency Spanish verbs are irregular. Irregular
means that they follow no specific rules of conjugation, and you must
memorize them. Some of these verbs are used in idiomtic expressions
that can help you speak the language more colloquially.

An idiom is a particular word or expression whose meaning cannot be
readily understood by either its grammar or the words used. Idiomatic
expressions cannot be translated word for word without causing confu-
sion. Imagine trying to grammatically explain to a non-native English
speaker the meaning of:

  It’s raining cats and dogs.

  They fell for it hook, line, and sinker.

**Verbs Only Irregular for Yo**
The following high-frequency verbs have irregular yo forms only in the
present tense. You should commit them to memory because you will use
them often:

• conocer (koh-noh-sehr) to know: yo conozco. Other verbs like cono-
cer are agradecer (ah-grah-deh-sehr) to thank, crecer (kreh-sehr) to
grow, merecer (meh-reh-sehr) to deserve, ofrecer (oh-freh-sehr) to
offer, reconocer (rrreh-koh-noh-sehr) to recognize.

• caer (kah-yehr) to fall: yo caigo

• dar (dahr) to give: yo doy. The following list gives the most common
idiomatic expressions that use the verb dar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dar a</td>
<td>to face</td>
<td>Mi casa da al mar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(My house faces the sea.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dar las gracias (a) to thank
Me dan las gracias.
(They thank me.)

dar un paseo to take a walk
¿Quieres dar un paseo?
(Do you want to take a walk?)

dar una vuelta to take a stroll
Vamos a dar una vuelta.
(We are going to take a stroll.)
darse cuenta de to realize
Me doy cuenta de mi error.
(I realize my mistake.)
darse prisa to hurry
Tengo que darme prisa.
(I have to hurry.)

• *hacer* (ah-sehr) to make, do: yo hago. Below is a list of common idiomatic expressions that use the verb *hacer*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hacer buen (mal)</td>
<td>to be nice (bad)</td>
<td>Hace buen tiempo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiempo</td>
<td>weather</td>
<td>(It's nice weather.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer frío (calor)</td>
<td>to be cold (hot)</td>
<td>Hace calor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>weather</td>
<td>(It's hot.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer una pregunta</td>
<td>to ask a question</td>
<td>Hágame una pregunta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Ask me a question.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer un viaje</td>
<td>to take a trip</td>
<td>Hago un viaje a Roma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(I'm taking a trip to Rome.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacerse + noun</td>
<td>to become</td>
<td>Nos hacemos amigos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(We’re becoming friends.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• *poner* (poh-nehr) to put: yo pongo
• *saber* (sah-behr) to know a fact, to know how to: yo sé
• *salir* (sah-leer) to go out: yo salgo
• *traducir* (trah-doo-seer) to translate: yo traduzco. Other verbs like *traducir* are *conducir* (kohn-doo-seer) to drive, conduct, or lead, *producir* (proh-doo-seer), *reducir* (rrreh-doo-seer).
• *traer* (trah-yehr) to bring: yo traigo
• *ver* (behr) to see: yo veo

**Other Irregular Verbs**
The following verbs are irregular in all forms, and you should memorize them:
decir (deh-seer)—to say, tell

- yo digo (dee-goh) nosotros decimos (deh-see-mohs)
- tú dices (dee-sehs) vosotros decís (deh-sees)
- él, ella, Ud. dice (dee-seh) ellos, ellas, Uds. dicen (dee-sehn)

estar (eh-stahr)—to be

- yo estoy (eh-stoy) nosotros estamos (eh-stah-mohs)
- tú estás (eh-stahs) vosotros estáis (eh-stah-ees)
- él, ella, Ud. está (eh-stah) ellos, ellas, Uds. están (eh-stahn)

The following are the very common idiomatic expressions that use the verb *estar*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>estar a punto de</td>
<td>to be just about</td>
<td>Estoy a punto de salir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ infinitive)</td>
<td>to (+ infinitive)</td>
<td>(I’m just about to leave.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estar por</td>
<td>to be inclined to</td>
<td>Estoy por cocinar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ infinitive)</td>
<td>(+ infinitive)</td>
<td>(I’m inclined to cook.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estar de acuerdo</td>
<td>to be in agreement</td>
<td>Estoy de acuerdo con Ud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(I agree with you.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ir (eer)—to go

- yo voy (boy) nosotros vamos (bah-mohs)
- tú vas (bahs) vosotros vais (bah-yees)
- él, ella, Ud. va (bah) ellos, ellas, Uds. van (bahn)

oír (oh-eer)—to hear

- yo oigo (oy-goh) nosotros oímos (oh-ee-mohs)
- tú oyes (oy-ehs) vosotros oís (oh-ees)
- él, ella, Ud. oye (oy-eh) ellos, ellas, Uds. oyen (oy-ehn)

ser (sehr)—to be

- yo soy (soy) nosotros somos (soh-mohs)
- tú eres (eh-rehs) vosotros sois (soh-yees)
- él, ella, Ud. es (ehs) ellos, ellas, Uds. son (sohn)
**tener (tehn-ehr)—to have**

- yo tengo (tehn-goh)  
- tú tienes (tee-yeh-nehs)  
- él, ella, Ud. tiene  
- nosotros tenemos (teh-neh-mohs)  
- vosotros tenéis (teh-neh-yees)  
- ellos, ellas, Uds. tienen (tee-yeh-nehn)  
- (tee-yeh-neh)

In most instances, if a larger verb form contains an irregular verb you recognize, the chances are great that you may use the conjugation endings of the smaller verb. *Tener* is contained in *contener* (cohn-teh-nehr) to contain, *detener* (deh-teh-nehr) to detain, *entretener* (ehn-treh-teh-nehr) to entertain, *mantener* (mahn-teh-nehr) to maintain, *obtener* (ohb-teh-nehr) to obtain and *sostener* (soh-steh-nehr) to sustain. You conjugate these verbs as you would *tener*.

Although English speakers use the verb “to be” when speaking about certain physical conditions, Spanish speakers use the verb “to have” (*tener*) plus a noun to express the same thought.

The following list gives the very common idiomatic expressions that use the verb *tener*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| tener . . . años   | to be . . . years old | Yo tengo veinte años.  
(I'm twenty years old.) |
| tener calor (frío) | to be hot (cold)      | Yo tengo calor. (I'm hot.)        |
| tener cuidado     | to be careful         | Tenga cuidado. (Be careful.)      |
| tener ganas de    | to feel like          | Tengo ganas de salir.  
(I feel like going out.) |
| tener hambre      | to be hungry          | Tenemos hambre. (We're hungry.)   |
| tener sed         | to be thirsty         | Tienen sed. (They are thirsty.)   |
| tener miedo de    | to be afraid of       | Tengo miedo de eso.  
(I'm afraid of that.) |
| tener prisa       | to be in a hurry      | Ella tiene prisa. (She's in a hurry.) |
| tener que         | to have to            | Tengo que estudiar.  
(I have to study.) |
| tener razón       | to be right           | Ud. tiene razón. (You're right.) |
| tener suerte      | to be lucky           | Tengo suerte. (I'm lucky.)        |
venir (behn-neer)—to come

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo vengo</td>
<td>nosotros venimos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú vienes</td>
<td>vosotros venís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

USES OF THE PRESENT TENSE

The present tense is customarily used instead of the future tense to ask for instructions or to discuss an action that will take place in the immediate future:

- Yo preparo la cena? Shall I prepare dinner?
- Yo te veo pronto. I'll see you soon.

To express an event that began in the past and is continuing in the present, use the following formulas for questions and answers. Questions containing hace + que must be answered with hace + que. Those questions containing desde must be answered with desde.

- ¿Cuánto tiempo hace + que + present tense?
- ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que vives aquí?
  How long have you been living here?

  - hace + an expression of time + que + present tense
  - Hace un año que vivo aquí.
  - I've been living here for a year.

- ¿Desde cuándo + present tense?
- ¿Desde cuándo vives aquí?
  How long have you been living here?

  - present tense + desde
  - Vivo aquí desde hace un año.
  - I've been living here a year.
NOTE

When it is necessary to use two verbs in succession, the first verb is conjugated and the second verb remains in the infinitive:

Yo quiero salir. I want to go out.
Ellos pueden bailar. They can dance.

THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Whereas the present tense expresses what the subject generally does at any given time, the present progressive expresses what the subject is doing now. The present progressive is formed as follows: estar (conjugated) + present participle (gerund—the -ing form).

Gerunds are formed as follows:

- From -ar verb infinitives, drop -ar and add -ando: Yo estoy cantando. (I’m singing.)
- From -er and -ir verb infinitives, drop -er or -ir and add -iendo:
  - Él no está comiendo. He’s not eating.
  - Estamos escribiendo un poema. We’re writing a poem.

For -er and -ir verbs whose stems end in a vowel, add -yendo:

- creer (to believe) creyendo
- leer (to read) leyendo
- oír (to hear) oyendo
- traer (to bring) trayendo

- Stem-changing -ir verbs change the stem vowel from e to i and from o to u:
  - decir (to say, tell) diciendo
  - dormir (to sleep) durmiendo
  - morir (to die) muriendo
  - pedir (to ask) pidiendo
  - sentir (to feel) sintiendo
  - venir (to come) viniendo
• Note the following irregular gerunds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish Verb</th>
<th>Spanish Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ir (to go)</td>
<td>yendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poder (to be able to)</td>
<td>pudiendo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TIME’S UP!

Without looking back, try to correctly complete this short story about a boy and his friend. Conjugate the verbs carefully.

Yo ______ (1. estar) en casa. Yo ______ (2. ser) un muchacho muy aplicado. Yo ______ (3. tener) hambre. Yo ______ (4. querer) comer.

Yo ______ (5. poder) preparar una comida deliciosa. Yo ______ (6. buscar) los ingredientes. Yo ______ (7. medir) todo con cuidado.

Yo no ______ (8. sustituir) nada. Mi madre ______ (9. venir) a la cocina. Nosotros ______ (10. ir) a comer mi excelente arroz con pollo.
This page intentionally left blank.
The Past Tense
(The Preterit)

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Using the preterit
• Using -ir stem-changing verbs and irregular verbs in the preterit
• Using the present and preterit perfect tenses
• Forming the imperfect and the pluperfect
• The preterit versus the imperfect

In this chapter you’ll learn when to use the preterit and when to use the imperfect. You’ll also learn how to recognize the present perfect tense (implying the past) and the past perfect tenses, and when to use each.
FORMING THE PRETERIT
The preterit, which expresses an action or event completed at a specific time in the past, is referred to in Spanish as el pretérito.

The preterit of regular verbs is formed by dropping the -ar, -er, or -ir infinitive endings and adding the following preterit endings as shown here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>-AR VERBS</th>
<th>-ER AND -IR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>-é (eh)</td>
<td>-i (ee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>-aste (ahs-teh)</td>
<td>-iste (ees-teh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>-ó (oh)</td>
<td>-ió (ee-yoh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>-amos (ah-mohs)</td>
<td>-imos (ee-mohs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>-asteis (ahs-teh-yees)</td>
<td>-isteis (ees-teh-yees)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
<td>-aron (ah-rohn)</td>
<td>-ieron (ee-yeh-rohn)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs That Change i to y
Except for the verb traer (to bring) and verbs ending in -guir, which are regular in the preterit, all -er and -ir verbs that end in a vowel when the infinitive ending is dropped, change i to y in the third person singular (él, ella, Ud.) and plural (ellos, ellas, Uds.) forms. The first and second person forms all have an accented i: í.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>YO</th>
<th>TÚ</th>
<th>ÉL</th>
<th>NOSOTROS</th>
<th>VOSOTROS</th>
<th>ELLOS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caer</td>
<td>ca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-í</td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to fall)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creer</td>
<td>cre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to believe)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leer</td>
<td>le</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-í</td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to read)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oír</td>
<td>o</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to hear)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poseer</td>
<td>pose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>-yó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to possess)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs ending in -uir (construir, distribuir, incluir, and so on) follow the i to y change but do not accent the i in the tú, nosotros, or v osotros forms: incluí, incluiste, incluyó, incluimos, incluisteis, incluyeron.
Verbs Ending in -car, -gar, and -zar

Verbs ending in -car, -gar, and -zar have the following changes only in the yo form of the preterit:

- *c* changes to *qu*  
  aplicar (to apply)  
  yo apliqué

- *g* changes to *gu*  
  castigar (to punish)  
  yo castigué

- *z* changes to *c*  
  avanzar (to advance)  
  yo avancé

Some common verbs ending in -car are listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buscar</td>
<td>boos-kahr</td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comunicar</td>
<td>koh-moo-nee-kahr</td>
<td>to communicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explicar</td>
<td>eh-splee-kahr</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>significar</td>
<td>seeg-nee-fee-kahr</td>
<td>to mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tocar</td>
<td>toh-kahr</td>
<td>to touch, to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(music)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common -gar verbs are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apagar</td>
<td>ah-pah-gahr</td>
<td>to turn off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colgar (ue)</td>
<td>kohl-gahr</td>
<td>to hang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entregar</td>
<td>ehn-treh-gahr</td>
<td>to deliver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jugar (ue)</td>
<td>hoo-gahr</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>llegar</td>
<td>yeh-gahr</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common -zar verbs are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>almorzar (ue)</td>
<td>ahl-moh-sahr</td>
<td>to eat lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comenzar(ie)</td>
<td>koh-mehn-sahr</td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empezar (ie)</td>
<td>ehm-peh-sahr</td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gozar</td>
<td>goh-sahr</td>
<td>to enjoy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-ir Stem-Changing Verbs in the Preterit
Present-tense stem-changing (shoe) verbs ending in -ir also have a stem change in the preterit. In the third person forms, e changes to i, and o changes to u, as in the following examples:

preferir: preferí, preferiste, prefirió, preferimos, preferisteis, prefirieron

servir: sirvió, sirviste, servimos, servisteis, sirvieron

dormir: dormí, dormiste, durmió, dormimos, dormisteis, durmieron

Irregular Verbs in the Preterit
Most irregular verbs in the preterit have the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>yo</th>
<th>-e</th>
<th>nosotros</th>
<th>-imos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>-iste</td>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>-isteis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
<td>-ieron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The stems of high-frequency irregular verbs are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>STEM</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>estar</td>
<td>estuv-</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer</td>
<td>hic-</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poder</td>
<td>pud-</td>
<td>to be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poner</td>
<td>pus-</td>
<td>to put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>querer</td>
<td>quis-</td>
<td>to want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saber</td>
<td>sup-</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tener</td>
<td>tuv-</td>
<td>to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venir</td>
<td>vin-</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decir</td>
<td>dij-</td>
<td>to say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traer</td>
<td>traj-</td>
<td>to bring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other irregularities to which you must pay careful attention include:

- If the stem ends in a j, add only -eron in the third person plural:
  Ellos dijeron la verdad. (They told the truth.)
- The third person singular (él, ella, Ud.) form of hacer in the preterit is hizo (ee-soh). This change preserves the soft sound of the consonant: Ella hizo el trabajo. (She did the work.)
- Dar (to give) is conjugated as follows in the preterit: di, diste, dio, dimos, disteis, dieron.
• The verbs *ser* (to be) and *ir* (to go) have the same preterit forms: *fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron.*

> Él fue abogado. He was a lawyer.
> Él fue al centro. He went downtown.

• The accent mark is omitted in the preterit forms of *dar, ser, ver,* and *ir:*

  *dar:* di, diste, dio, dimos, disteis, dieron

  *ir* and *ser:* fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron

  *ver:* vi, viste, vio, vimos, visteis, vieron

• All verbs ending in *-ducir* are conjugated in the preterite like *producir:* produje, produjiste, produjo, produjimos, produjisteis, produjeron. Other common verbs ending in *-ducir* are *conducir* (to drive, to conduct); *deducir* (to deduce); and *reducir* (to reduce).

• All compounds of verbs (*tener, detener,* etc.) are conjugated in the preterite in the same manner as the basic verb.

**THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE**

The present perfect tense describes an action that started in the past and continues to the present, or an action that happened in the past but is in some way connected to the present.

The present perfect tense is a compound tense. Compound is the key word because it implies that this tense is made up of more than one part. In fact, the present perfect, as well as other compound tenses, is made up of two elements. Observe how this works.

**Formation of the Present Perfect**
The present perfect of most Spanish verbs is formed by combining the present tense of *haber* and the past participle of the verb expressing the action.

The formula for the formation of the present perfect is: subject (noun or pronoun) + helping verb + past participle.

**The Helping Verb Haber**
Because *haber* means “to have,” it serves well as the helping verb. First, it must be conjugated in the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense of Haber</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo he</td>
<td>nosotros hemos (eh-mohs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú has</td>
<td>vosotros habéis (ah-beh-yees)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud. ha</td>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds. han (ahn)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After you have conjugated *haber* in the appropriate person, you must add a past participle.

**Past Participles of Regular Verbs**
The past participle of regular verbs is formed by dropping the *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* infinitive ending and adding *-ado* for *-ar* verbs and *-ido* for *-er* and *-ir* verbs:

- **hablar** 
  - past participle: **hablado** 
  - pronunciation: ahl-blah-doh 
  - meaning: spoken

- **comer** 
  - past participle: **comido** 
  - pronunciation: ko-mee-doh 
  - meaning: eaten

- **recibir** 
  - past participle: **recibido** 
  - pronunciation: reh-seh-bi-doh 
  - meaning: received

When an *-er* or *-ir* stem ends in a vowel, add an accent mark on the *i* as follows:

- **caer** 
  - past participle: **caído** 
  - pronunciation: kah-ee-doh 
  - meaning: fallen

- **creer** 
  - past participle: **creído** 
  - pronunciation: kreh-dee-doh 
  - meaning: believed

- **leer** 
  - past participle: **leído** 
  - pronunciation: leh-ee-doh 
  - meaning: read

- **oír** 
  - past participle: **oído** 
  - pronunciation: oh-ee-doh 
  - meaning: heard

English usage often omits the use of the helping verb, although it is implied. For example, “I prepared the dinner” is acceptable for “I have prepared the dinner.” In Spanish, the helping verb is used: *He preparado la cena*. The past participle remains the same for every subject. Only the helping verb changes:

- **Yo he comido.** 
  - **Nosotros hemos comido.**

- **Tú has comido.** 
  - **Vosotros habéis comido.**

- **Él, ella, Ud. ha comido.** 
  - **Ellos, ellas, Uds. han comido.**

**Past Participles of Irregular Verbs**
The verbs shown here, and their compounds (for example, *volver*, *devolver*, etc.), have irregular past participles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abrir (to open)</td>
<td>abierto</td>
<td>ah-bee-yehr-toh</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decir (to say)</td>
<td>dicho</td>
<td>dee-choh</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escribir (to write)</td>
<td>escrito</td>
<td>ehs-kree-toh</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer (to do)</td>
<td>hecho</td>
<td>eh-choh</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE PRETERIT PERFECT
The preterit perfect has limited use because it is employed primarily in formal, literary, and historical writings to express that an action or event had just ended. The preterit or the pluperfect is preferred in conversation and informal writing. Therefore, learn the preterit perfect only for recognition, as you will be seeing it primarily in literary works.

The preterit perfect is formed by using the preterit of the helping verb haber and the past participle. The preterit of haber is:

- yo hubo (oo-boh)  
- tú hubiste (oo-bees-teh)  
- él hubo (oo-boh)  
- nosotros hubimos (oo-bee-mohs)  
- vosotros hubistéis (oo-bee-steh-yees)  
- ellos hubieron (oo-bee-yeh-rohn)

Apenas hube llegado a casa Scarcely had I arrived home when
cuando él me telefoneó. he called me.
En cuanto hubimos entrado, As soon as we had entered,
todo el mundo aplaudió. everybody applauded.

THE IMPERFECT
The imperfect expresses a continuing state or an incomplete action in the past:

The door was open.
He was watching television.

Regular Verbs
The imperfect of regular verbs is formed by dropping the -ar, -er, or -ir infinitive ending and adding the imperfect endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>-AR VERBS</th>
<th>-ER AND -IR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>-aba (ah-bah)</td>
<td>-ía (ee-yah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>-abas (ah-bahs)</td>
<td>-ías (ee-yahs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>-aba (ah-bah)</td>
<td>-ía (ee-yah)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Irregular Verbs
There are only three Spanish verbs that are irregular in the imperfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Yo</th>
<th>Tú</th>
<th>Él</th>
<th>Nosotros</th>
<th>Vosotros</th>
<th>Ellos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ir (to go)</td>
<td>iba</td>
<td>ibas</td>
<td>iba</td>
<td>íbamos</td>
<td>ibais</td>
<td>iban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ser (to be)</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>era</td>
<td>éramos</td>
<td>érais</td>
<td>eran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ver (to see)</td>
<td>veía</td>
<td>veías</td>
<td>veía</td>
<td>veíamos</td>
<td>veíais</td>
<td>veían</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE PLUPERFECT
The pluperfect is used to describe an action that had been completed in the past before another past action took place:

I had lived there before.

They had eaten in that restaurant in the past.

The pluperfect is actually the compound form of the imperfect. The pluperfect is composed of two parts: the imperfect of the helping verb haber (which expresses “had”) and the past participle of the verb indicating the action that took place. The imperfect of haber is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Yo</th>
<th>Nosotros</th>
<th>Vosotros</th>
<th>Ellos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo había</td>
<td>nosotros habíamos</td>
<td>vosotros habíais</td>
<td>ellos habían</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ella tenía hambre porque ella no había comido nada.

She was hungry because she hadn’t eaten anything.

THE PRETERIT VERSUS THE IMPERFECT
The preterit expresses an action that was completed at a specific time in the past. Think of the action as one moment in time. Think, too, of a camera. The preterit represents an action that could be captured by an instamatic—the action happened and was completed.

The imperfect, on the other hand, expresses an action that continued in the past over an indefinite period of time. Think again of a camera. The imperfect represents an action that could be captured by a video camera—the action continued over a period of time, it was happening, used to happen, or would (meaning “used to”) happen.
The basic uses of the preterit and the imperfect are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRETERIT</th>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Expresses specific actions or events that were started and completed at a definite time in the past (even if the time isn’t mentioned).</td>
<td>1. Describes ongoing or continuous actions or events (what was happening) in the past (which may or may not have been completed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Él preparó la cena. He prepared dinner.</td>
<td>Ella hablaba con su amiga. She was speaking to her friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Expresses a specific action or event that occurred at a specific point in past time.</td>
<td>2. Describes habitual or repeated actions in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Él salió ayer. He went out yesterday.</td>
<td>Generalmente salía a menudo. He usually went out often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Expresses a specific action or event that was repeated a stated number of times.</td>
<td>3. Describes a person, place, thing, or state of mind with the verbs creer (to believe), pensar (to think), querer (to want), and saber (to know).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juan telefoneó dos veces. John called two times.</td>
<td>Ella estaba triste. She was unhappy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Queríamos salir. We wanted to go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Expresses time of day.</td>
<td>Era la una. It was one o’clock.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect is used to describe a situation that was going on in the past when another action or event took place. The action or event that took place is in the preterit: *Yo salía cuando el teléfono sonó.* (I was going out when the telephone rang.)

When *would* means “used to,” use the imperfect: I would go to the beach every weekend with my friends.

When *would* states what the subject would do under specific conditions (I would go to the beach if the weather were nice), use the conditional, which is discussed in further detail in Chapter 20:00.
### Clues to the Preterit and the Imperfect

The following words and expressions often require the use of the preterit because they specify a time period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ayer</td>
<td>ah-yehr</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayer por la noche</td>
<td>ah-yehr pohr lah noh-cheh</td>
<td>last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de repente</td>
<td>deh rreh-pehn-teh</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el año pasado</td>
<td>ehl ah-nyoh pah-sah-doh</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el otro día</td>
<td>ehl oh-troh dee-yah</td>
<td>the other day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la semana pasada</td>
<td>lah seh-mah-nah pah-sah-dah</td>
<td>last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por fin</td>
<td>pohr feen</td>
<td>finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primero</td>
<td>pree-meh-roh</td>
<td>at first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un día</td>
<td>oon dee-yah</td>
<td>one day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una vez</td>
<td>oo-nah behs</td>
<td>one time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect is used with the following expressions that generally imply repetition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a menudo</td>
<td>ah meh-noo-doh</td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a veces</td>
<td>ah beh-sehs</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cada día</td>
<td>kah-dah dee-yah</td>
<td>each/every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de vez en cuando</td>
<td>deh behs ehn kwahn-doh</td>
<td>from time to time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en general</td>
<td>ehn heh-neh-ralh</td>
<td>generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siempre</td>
<td>see-yehm-preh</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>todo el tiempo</td>
<td>toh-doh ehl tee-yehm-poh</td>
<td>all the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>todos los días</td>
<td>toh-dohs lohs dee-yahs</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usualmente</td>
<td>oo-soo-wahl-mehn-teh</td>
<td>usually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes you may be confused about which form of past tense to use. Do not be overly concerned about this. In many instances, either the preterit or the imperfect is acceptable depending upon the meaning the speaker is trying to convey:
Yo habló con mis amigas.  
I spoke with my friends.  
(The action is completed.)

Yo hablaba con mis amigas.  
I was speaking to my friends.  
(The action was ongoing or continuous in the past.)

 principio

TIME’S UP!

Read this young girl’s story about her past and fill in the correct form of the verb in the appropriate tense, the preterit or the imperfect:

Cuando yo ______ (1. tener) 14 años, yo ______ (2. ir) a la escuela todos los días para ver a un muchacho en mi clase de español, Ramón.  
Él ______ (3. ser) muy guapo. Desafortunadamente él no ______ (4. prestar) atención a las muchachas porque siempre ______ (5. jugar) a los deportes con sus amigos. Pero un día, después de las clases, él me ______ (6. pedir) mi número de teléfono. Él ______ (7. querer) salir conmigo. Yo ______ (8. estar) muy contenta.  
Nosotros ______ (9. ir) al cine para ver una historia de amor ridícula.  
De esta manera yo ______ (10. conocer) a mi futuro marido.
This page intentionally left blank.
Back to the Future

Speaking Conditionally

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Forming and using the future
• Forming and using the conditional

In this chapter you’ll learn how to form, use, and differentiate between the future tense and the conditional. You will need to pay careful attention to the verb endings and to what you are trying to express.
THE FUTURE
In Spanish, the future may be expressed in three possible ways: by using the present, by using \textit{ir} + \textit{a} + infinitive, and by using the future tense. You can expect to encounter any of these forms regularly in daily conversations.

Using the Present to Express the Future
The present tense may be used to imply the future when asking for instructions or referring to an action that will take place in the immediate future. You will instinctively know when the future is implied by the present through the context of the conversation.

- ¿Pongo el libro aquí? Shall I put the book here?
- Ella telefonea más tarde. She will call later.

\textit{Ir} + \textit{a} + Infinitive
In Spanish, as in English, the near future may be expressed with a form of the present tense of the verb \textit{ir} (to go) + \textit{a} + the infinitive referring to the action that the speaker will perform. The near future is generally used for an action that is imminent, that is going to happen soon.

The irregular present tense of \textit{ir} is conjugated as follows:

\begin{center}
\textit{ir}—to go  \\
yo voy (boy)  \\
tú vas (bahs)  \\
el, ella, Ud. va (bah) \\
nosotros vamos (bah-mohs)  \\
vosotros vais (bah-yees)  \\
ellos, ellas, Uds. van (bahn)
\end{center}

Add \textit{a} + an infinitive to get the near future:

- Voy a ir a España. I'm going to go to Spain.
- Vamos a viajar en avión. We're going to travel by plane.

THE FUTURE TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS
The future tense tells what the subject will do or what action will take place in future time. The future tense of all regular verbs is formed by adding the endings indicated in bold to the infinitive of the verb, as shown here.

-ar Verbs

\begin{center}
\textbf{hablar}—to speak  \\
yo hablaré (ah-blah-reh)  \\
nosotros hablaremos (ah-blah-reh-mohs)
\end{center}
-er Verbs

**leer—to read**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yo leeré} & \quad \text{nosotros leeremos} \\
\text{tú leerás} & \quad \text{vosotros leeréis} \\
\text{él leerá} & \quad \text{ellos leerán}
\end{align*}
\]

-it Verbs

**abrir—to open**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yo abriré} & \quad \text{nosotros abriremos} \\
\text{tú abrirás} & \quad \text{vosotros abrieréis} \\
\text{él abrirá} & \quad \text{ellos abrierán}
\end{align*}
\]

It is important that you note the following idiosyncrasies about the formation of the future of regular verbs:

- All future endings except -emos have accent marks.
- Verbs that have an accent mark in the infinitive (such as oír) drop that accent in the future: yo oiré.

**THE FUTURE TENSE OF IRREGULAR VERBS**

The following verbs have irregular future stems, which always end in -r or -rr. Just add the future endings to these stems to get the correct future form:

- Verbs like poder drop the e from the infinitive ending before adding the future endings:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{INFINITIVE} & \quad \text{STEM} \\
\text{haber (to have)} & \quad \text{habr-} \\
\text{poder (to be able to)} & \quad \text{podr-} \\
\text{querer (to want)} & \quad \text{querr-} \\
\text{saber (to know)} & \quad \text{sabr-}
\end{align*}
\]

- Verbs like poner substitute a d for the e or i in the infinitive ending before adding the future endings:
The verbs *decir* and *hacer* have irregular future stems:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>STEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decir (to say, tell)</td>
<td>dir-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer (to make, do)</td>
<td>har-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Compounds of irregular verbs (such as *contener*, a compound of *tener*) are also irregular.

**Uses of the Future**

The future is used as follows:

- The future tense, as in English, is used to express what will happen:

  - **Él llegará mañana.** He will arrive tomorrow.
  - **Iremos a España.** We will go to Spain.

The future is used to express wonder and probability in the present:

  - **¿Cuántos años tendrá?** I wonder how old he is.
  - **Será la medianoche.** It’s probably midnight.
  - **Estarán viejos.** They must be old.

**THE FUTURE PERFECT**

You use the future perfect to describe an action or event that will happen in the future before another future action. Because you are expressing what will have happened, you need the future of the helping verb *haber* + the past participle of the verb that shows the action or event to have been completed. The future perfect of *haber* is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>haber</em>—to have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo habré (ah-breh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú habrás (ah-brahs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él habrá (ah-brah)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Él habrá terminado el trabajo antes de que el día termine.

He will have finished the work before the end of the day.

You may also use the future perfect to express probability in the recent past:

¿Lo habrán hecho? I wonder if they did it.
Ella habrá perdido su dinero. She has probably lost her money.
Habré ganado. I must have won.

THE CONDITIONAL

The conditional is not a tense, because it does not indicate a time period. It is, instead, a mood that expresses what the speaker would do or what would happen under certain circumstances or conditions.

You form the conditional with the same stem that you use to form the future, and by adding the endings indicated in bold. Note these are the same endings used to form the imperfect.

-ar Verbs

*hablar—to speak*

| yo hablaría (ah-blah-ree-yah) | nosotros hablaríamos (ah-blah-ree-yah-mohs) |
| tú hablarías (ah-blah-ree-yahs) | vosotros hablaríais (ah-blah-ree-yah-ees) |
| él hablaría (ah-blah-ree-yah) | ellos hablarían (ah-blah-ree-yahn) |

-er Verbs

*leer—to read*

| yo leería (leh-yeh-ree-yah) | nosotros leeríamos (leh-yeh-ree-yah-mohs) |
| tú leerías (leh-yeh-ree-yahs) | vosotros leeríais (leh-yeh-ree-yah-ees) |
| él leería (leh-yeh-ree-yah) | ellos leerían (leh-yeh-ree-yahn) |

-ir Verbs

*abrir—to open*

| yo abriría (ah-bree-ree-yah) | nosotros abriríamos (ah-bree-ree-yah-mohs) |
| tú abrirías (ah-bree-ree-yahs) | vosotros abriríais (ah-bree-ree-yah-ees) |
| él abriría (ah-bree-ree-yah) | ellos abrirían (ah-bree-ree-yahn) |
Uses of the Conditional

Use the conditional as follows:

- The conditional is used to express what would happen under certain conditions: *Si hiciera buen tiempo, yo no iría al cine. Yo montaría en bicicleta.* (If the weather were nice, I wouldn’t go to the movies. I’d go bike riding.)

  When *would* has the sense of “used to,” the imperfect is used: *Viajaba en Europa a menudo.* (I would (used to) travel to Europe often.)

  When *would* has the sense of “to be willing, to want,” the preterit of *querer* is used: *Quise viajar a Europa.* (I wanted [was willing] to travel to Europe.)

- The conditional is used to express wonder and probability in the past:

  ¿Cuántos años tendría?  I wonder how old you were.

  Sería la medianoche.  It was probably midnight.

  Estarían viejos.  They must have been old.

THE PERFECT CONDITIONAL

Use the perfect conditional to describe an action or event that would have taken place in the past had something else happened.

Because you are expressing what would have happened, you need the conditional of the helping verb *haber* + the past participle of the verb that shows the action or event that would have been completed. The conditional of *haber* is:

*haber*—to have

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>habría (ah-bree-yah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>habríamos (ah-bree-yah-mohs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>habrías (ah-bree-yahs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>habríais (ah-bree-yah-ees)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él</td>
<td>habría (ah-bree-yah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos</td>
<td>habrían (ah-bree-yan)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Con más tiempo, yo habría terminado el trabajo.  With more time, I would have finished the work.
Part I
Complete the sentence with the correct form of the future:
En el año 2010 yo

1. (ser) ____________________ más inteligente.
2. (querer) ____________________ viajar.
3. (tener) ____________________ mucho dinero.
4. (vivir) ____________________ en una casa grande.
5. (conducir) ____________________ un automóvil deportivo.

Part II
Complete the sentence with the correct form of the conditional:
Con un millón de dólares yo

6. (poner) ____________________ mi dinero en el banco.
7. (dar) ____________________ mucho dinero a los pobres.
8. (hacer) ____________________ un viaje a través del mundo.
9. (comprar) ____________________ un castillo para mi familia.
10. (decir) ____________________ la verdad a todo el mundo.
This page intentionally left blank.
Adding Adjectives and Adverbs

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Making adjectives feminine and/or plural
• Positioning adjectives properly
• Using ser and estar with adjectives
• Forming and using adverbs properly

In this lesson you’ll learn how to use adjectives, how to make them agree with the nouns they describe, and where to position them with respect to the noun.
MAKING ADJECTIVES FEMININE
Most Spanish adjectives form the feminine singular by changing the o of the masculine adjective to a, as shown in the table below. This table and the ones that follow will help you build a good, working adjective vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aburrido (ah-boo-ree-doh)</td>
<td>aburrida</td>
<td>boring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alto (ahl-toh)</td>
<td>alta</td>
<td>tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bajo (bah-hoh)</td>
<td>baja</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonito (boh-nee-toh)</td>
<td>bonita</td>
<td>pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bueno (boo-weh-noh)</td>
<td>buena</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delgado (dehl-gah-doh)</td>
<td>delgada</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divertido (dee-behr-tee-doh)</td>
<td>divertida</td>
<td>fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enfermo (ehn-fehr-moh)</td>
<td>enferma</td>
<td>sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enojado (eh-noh-hah-doh)</td>
<td>enojada</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famoso (fah-moh-soh)</td>
<td>famosa</td>
<td>famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feo (feh-yoh)</td>
<td>fea</td>
<td>ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flaco (flah-koh)</td>
<td>flaca</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generoso (heh-neh-roh-soh)</td>
<td>generosa</td>
<td>generous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gordo (gohr-doh)</td>
<td>gorda</td>
<td>fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guapo (goo-wah-poh)</td>
<td>guapa</td>
<td>pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listo (lees-toh)</td>
<td>lista</td>
<td>smart, ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malo (mah-loh)</td>
<td>mala</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necesario (neh-seh-sah-ree-yoh)</td>
<td>necesaria</td>
<td>necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuevo (noo-weh-boh)</td>
<td>nueva</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pequeño (peh-keh-nyoh)</td>
<td>pequeña</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perezoso (peh-reh-soh-soh)</td>
<td>perezosa</td>
<td>lazy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfecto (pehr-fehk-toh)</td>
<td>perfecta</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rico (rree-koh)</td>
<td>rica</td>
<td>rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>romántico (rroh-mahn-tee-koh)</td>
<td>romántica</td>
<td>romantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubio (rroo-bee-yoh)</td>
<td>rubia</td>
<td>blond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Past participles of verbs may be used as adjectives. In such cases, the past participle must agree in gender and number with the noun it describes:

La puerta está cerrada. The door is closed.

Los libros están abiertos. The books are open.

**Masculine Adjectives Ending in Letters Other than 0**

If a masculine adjective ends in -a, -e, or a consonant, you don’t have to make any changes to get the feminine form. Note that most adjectives ending in -a are feminine, but those on the list below can be both. The following table demonstrates that these adjectives are spelled and pronounced in the same manner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alegre</td>
<td>ah-leh-greh</td>
<td>happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amable</td>
<td>ah-mah-bleh</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortés</td>
<td>kohr-tehs</td>
<td>courteous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difícil</td>
<td>dee-fee-seel</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eficiente</td>
<td>eh-fee-syehn-teh</td>
<td>efficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egoísta</td>
<td>eh-goh-ees-tah</td>
<td>selfish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excelente</td>
<td>ehg-seh-lehn-teh</td>
<td>excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fácil</td>
<td>fah-seel</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>grahn-deh</td>
<td>big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horrible</td>
<td>oh-rree-bleh</td>
<td>horrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importante</td>
<td>eem-pohr-tahn-teh</td>
<td>important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inteligente</td>
<td>een-teh-lee-hen-teh</td>
<td>intelligent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesante</td>
<td>een-teh-reh-sahn-teh</td>
<td>interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joven</td>
<td>hoh-behn</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimista</td>
<td>ohp-tee-mees-tah</td>
<td>optimistic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pesimista | peh-see-mees-tah | pessimistic
pobre | poh-breh | poor
popular | poh-poo-lahr | popular
realista | rreh-yah-lees-tah | realistic
triste | trees-teh | sad

Note the following irregularities to these rules:

- Some adjectives of nationality whose masculine form ends in a consonant add -a to form the feminine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>español</td>
<td>española</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>francés</td>
<td>francesa</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alemán</td>
<td>alemana</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some adjectives whose masculine form ends in -or add -a to form the feminine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hablador</td>
<td>habladora</td>
<td>talkative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encantador</td>
<td>encantadora</td>
<td>enchanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trabajador</td>
<td>trabajadora</td>
<td>hard-working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAKING ADJECTIVES PLURAL**

The plural of adjectives ending in a vowel is formed by adding s:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pequeño</td>
<td>pequeños</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alta</td>
<td>altas</td>
<td>tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grande</td>
<td>grandes</td>
<td>big</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of adjectives ending in a consonant is formed by adding -es:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fácil</td>
<td>fáciles</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
<td>populares</td>
<td>popular</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following exceptions to these rules:
Singular adjectives ending in -z change -z to -c in the plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feliz</td>
<td>felices</td>
<td>happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feroz</td>
<td>feroces</td>
<td>ferocious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagaz</td>
<td>sagaces</td>
<td>shrewd, astute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to maintain original stress, some adjectives add or drop an accent mark:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>joven (HOH-behn)</td>
<td>jóvenes (HOH-beh-nehs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>francés (frahn-SEHS)</td>
<td>franceses (frahn-SEH-sehs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inglés (een-GLEHS)</td>
<td>ingleses (een-GLEH-sehs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**POSITION OF ADJECTIVES**

The position of adjectives in Spanish follows different rules from those with which you may be accustomed in English:

- Unlike English, most descriptive adjectives in Spanish follow the noun they modify:
  
  - mis pantalones negros  my black pants
  
  - una casa nueva a new house

- When an adjective is used to emphasize quality or inherent characteristics, it may be placed before the noun:
  
  - Admiro los árboles con sus verdes hojas.  I admire the trees with their green leaves.
  
  - Me trae buenos recuerdos.  It brings me good memories.

- Adjectives that impose limits (numbers, possessive adjectives, demonstrative adjectives, and adjectives of quantity) usually precede the noun:
  
  - dos vestidos blancos  two white dresses
  
  - mis hijos  my children
  
  - este hombre  this man
  
  - algún día  someday
  
  - tal cosa  such a thing
Common adjectives of quantity are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>algunos(-as)</td>
<td>ahl-goo-nohs</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cada</td>
<td>kah-dah</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuanto(-a,-os,-as)</td>
<td>kwahn-toh</td>
<td>as much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>más</td>
<td>mahs</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menos</td>
<td>meh-nohs</td>
<td>less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ningunos(-as)</td>
<td>neen-goo-nohs</td>
<td>no, not any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poco(-a,-os,-as)</td>
<td>poh-koh</td>
<td>few, little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanto(-a,-os,-as)</td>
<td>tahn-toh</td>
<td>so much, many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>todo(-a,-os,-as)</td>
<td>toh-doh</td>
<td>all, very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unos(-as)</td>
<td>oo-nohs</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varios(-as)</td>
<td>bah-ree-yohs</td>
<td>several</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When more than one adjective is used in a description, put each adjective in its proper place, either before or after the noun, according to the previously mentioned rules. Two adjectives in the same position are joined by y (and):

  dos casas rojas two red houses
  un niño grande y flaco a tall, thin boy
  mis malos recuerdos my bad memories

- The masculine plural form of the adjective is used when it modifies two or more nouns of different gender: *El muchacho y la muchacha son ambiciosos*. (The boy and the girl are ambitious.)

### Shortened Forms of Adjectives

Spanish adjectives may take on shortened forms. Follow these rules for shortening adjectives in certain situations.

Some adjectives drop the final -o before a masculine singular noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uno</td>
<td>un hombre</td>
<td>a man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bueno</td>
<td>un buen libro</td>
<td>a good book</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
malo un mal año a bad year
primero el primer piso the first floor
tercero el tercer día the third day
alguno algún muchacho some boy
ninguno ningún amigo no friend

NOTE

An accent is added to the u of alguno and ninguno when the -o is dropped.

If the adjective is separated from the noun by a preposition, then the original adjective is used:

uno de mis amigos one of my friends

When grande is placed before a singular masculine or feminine noun it becomes gran and means “important, famous.” When it is placed after the noun it is not shortened and means “large”:

un gran actor a great actor
una gran actriz a great actress

But:

un apartamento grande a large apartment
una casa grande a large house

(See page 74 for more adjectives that change meaning depending on placement.)

Ciento becomes cien before a masculine or feminine noun and before the numbers mil and millones:

cien muchachos one hundred boys
cien muchachas one hundred girls
cien mil personas one hundred thousand people
cien millones de personas one hundred million people

But:

doscientas personas two hundred people
ciento cincuenta libros one hundred fifty books
The masculine *Santo* becomes *San* before the name of a saint whose name does not begin with *To-* or *Do-*:

San Juan  
Saint John

But:

Santo Domingo  
Saint Dominick

**Adjectives with Different Meanings**

Some adjectives have different meanings depending on whether they are positioned before or after the noun they modify. Adjectives before the noun tend to have a more literal meaning. When these adjectives follow the noun, the meaning changes:

- una costumbre antigua  
an old (ancient) custom
- una antigua costumbre  
an old (former) custom
- una cosa cierta  
a sure thing
- una cierta cosa  
a certain thing
- un hombre grande  
a tall (large, big) man
- un gran hombre  
a great man (quality, not size)
- el cuarto mismo  
the room itself
- el mismo cuarto  
the same room
- la gente pobre  
the poor people (without money)
- la pobre gente  
the unfortunate people
- una razón simple  
a silly reason
- una simple razón  
a simple reason
- una mujer triste  
a sad (unhappy) woman
- una triste mujer  
a sad (sorry, wretched) woman

**USING SER AND ESTAR WITH ADJECTIVES**

Because two verbs in Spanish express *to be*, it is important that you understand the differences in their usage, especially when you use them with adjectives.
Both ser and estar are irregular verbs and require that you memorize them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SER</th>
<th>ESTAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>soy</td>
<td>estoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>eres</td>
<td>estás</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él, ella, Ud.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>está</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>somos</td>
<td>estamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>sois</td>
<td>estáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos, ellas, Uds.</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>están</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carefully study the uses of ser to ensure that you use it correctly. Then compare the uses of ser with those of estar. Naturally it is best to use each verb properly, but keep in mind that if you make a mistake, you will still be understood.

1. Expresses a natural quality or inherent characteristic that will not change.
   
   Marta es colombiana.
   Martha is Colombian.
   
   La puerta es de madera.
   The door is made of wood.

2. Expresses traits that will probably not change soon.
   
   Mi hermana es abogada.
   My sister is a lawyer.
   
   Juan es rubio.
   Juan is blond.

3. Expresses time and dates.
   
   Es la una.
   It is one o'clock.
   
   Es el once de julio.
   It is July 11th.

1. Expresses a temporary state, condition, or phase or the result of an action that may change.
   
   Marta está enferma.
   Martha is sick.
   
   La puerta está abierta.
   The door is open.

2. Expresses a location or position of the subject.
   
   Ella está en su oficina.
   She is in her office.
   
   ¿Dónde está Juan?
   Where is Juan?

3. Is used to form the progressive tenses with the gerund.
   
   Está nevando.
   It is snowing.
   
   Estamos jugando.
   We are playing.
4. Expresses possession.
   
   Es mi coche.
   It’s my car.

5. Is used with impersonal expressions.

   Es necesario estudiar.
   It is necessary to study.

6. Expresses a passive action
   with the past participle and an adjective.

   La puerta fue abierta por Juan.
   The door was opened by Juan.

Some adjectives may be used with either verb, but will have different meanings according to the verb that is used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SER (CHARACTERISTICS)</th>
<th>ESTAR (CONDITIONS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Él no es aburrido.</td>
<td>Él no está aburrido.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He isn’t boring.</td>
<td>He isn’t bored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Él es bueno (malo).    | La comida está buena (mala).
| He is good (bad).      | The meal is good (bad).|
| Soy listo.             | Estoy listo.        |
| I’m clever (smart).    | I’m ready.          |
| Es pálida.             | Está pálida.        |
| She has a pale complexon. | She is pale.       |
| Es seguro.             | Está seguro.        |
| It is safe (reliable). | He is sure.         |
| Ella es viva.          | Ella está viva.     |
| She is quick (sharp).  | She is alive.       |
| Ud. es joven (viejo).  | Ud. está joven (viejo).|
| You are young (old).   | You look young (old).|
ADVERBS

An adverb is often a word that describes how the subject performs an action. In English, many adverbs end in -ly. The Spanish equivalent ending is -mente. Because adverbs modify verbs, you don’t need to worry about the agreement of adverbs.

Forming Adverbs

Adverbs are formed by adding -mente (mehn- teh) to the feminine singular form of the adjective as shown here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>FEMININE ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>claro</td>
<td>clara</td>
<td>claramente</td>
<td>clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>completo</td>
<td>completa</td>
<td>completamente</td>
<td>completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligente</td>
<td>diligente</td>
<td>diligentemente</td>
<td>diligently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>especial</td>
<td>especial</td>
<td>especialmente</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fácil</td>
<td>fácil</td>
<td>fácilmente</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
<td>final</td>
<td>finalmente</td>
<td>finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frecuente</td>
<td>frecuente</td>
<td>frecuentemente</td>
<td>frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lento</td>
<td>lenta</td>
<td>lentamente</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rápido</td>
<td>rápida</td>
<td>rápidamente</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverbial Phrases

The preposition con (with) + noun may be used to form an adverbial phrase. You can modify a verb by saying with + a noun: con claridad (with clarity), or by using the corresponding adverb: claramente (clearly).

Él habla con claridad. He speaks (with clarity) clearly.

Él habla claramente. He speaks clearly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON + NOUN</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>con claridad</td>
<td>claramente</td>
<td>clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con cuidado</td>
<td>cuidadosamente</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con habilidad</td>
<td>hábilmente</td>
<td>skillfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con paciencia</td>
<td>pacientemente</td>
<td>patiently</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES VERSUS ADVERBS

Pay attention to the Spanish words that have distinct forms for adjectives and adverbs:
Some Spanish words may be used as adjectives or adverbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bueno (good)</td>
<td>buenos días</td>
<td>good day(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malo (bad)</td>
<td>malos sueños</td>
<td>bad dreams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bien (well)</td>
<td>Baila bien.</td>
<td>He dances well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal (badly)</td>
<td>Canta mal.</td>
<td>She sings poorly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>más</td>
<td>Tengo más joyas.</td>
<td>Corro más rápidamente.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>I have more jewels.</td>
<td>I run more rapidly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menos</td>
<td>Tengo menos joyas.</td>
<td>Corro menos rápidamente.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less, fewer</td>
<td>I have fewer jewels.</td>
<td>I run less quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poco</td>
<td>Tengo pocas joyas.</td>
<td>Corro poco.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few, little</td>
<td>I have few jewels.</td>
<td>I run little.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mucho</td>
<td>Tengo muchas joyas.</td>
<td>Corro mucho.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much, many</td>
<td>I have many jewels.</td>
<td>I run a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mejor</td>
<td>Tengo mejores joyas.</td>
<td>Corro mejor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>I have better jewels.</td>
<td>I run better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peor</td>
<td>Tengo peores joyas.</td>
<td>Corro peor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worse</td>
<td>I have worse jewels.</td>
<td>I run worse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demasiado</td>
<td>Tengo demasiadas joyas.</td>
<td>Corro demasiado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too much, many</td>
<td>I have too many jewels.</td>
<td>I run too much.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When used as adjectives, *mucho*, *poco*, and *demasiado* agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify; *mejor* and *peor* only agree in number, forming the plural by adding *-es*; *más* and *menos* do not change. As adverbs, all of these words remain invariable.

Some adverbs and adverbial expressions are not formed from adjectives and, therefore, do not end in *-mente*. Here are the most common adverbs in this category.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADVERB</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ahora</td>
<td>ah-oh-rah</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al fin</td>
<td>ahl feen</td>
<td>finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allá</td>
<td>ah-yah</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a menudo</td>
<td>ah meh-noo-doh</td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquí</td>
<td>ah-kee</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bastante</td>
<td>bahs-tahn-teh</td>
<td>quite, rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casi</td>
<td>kah-see</td>
<td>almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerca</td>
<td>sehr-kah</td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demasiado</td>
<td>deh-mah-see-yah-doh</td>
<td>too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de nuevo</td>
<td>deh noo-weh-boh</td>
<td>again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de repente</td>
<td>deh rreh-pehn-teh</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>después</td>
<td>dehs-poo-wehs</td>
<td>afterward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lejos</td>
<td>leh-hohs</td>
<td>far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>más</td>
<td>mahs</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menos</td>
<td>meh-nohs</td>
<td>less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mejor</td>
<td>meh-hohr</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mientras</td>
<td>mee-yehn-trahs</td>
<td>meanwhile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muy</td>
<td>moo-wee</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peor</td>
<td>peh-yohr</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poco</td>
<td>poh-koh</td>
<td>little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por supuesto</td>
<td>pohr soo-poo-wehs-toh</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronto</td>
<td>prohn-toh</td>
<td>soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pues</td>
<td>poo-wehs</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siempre</td>
<td>see-yehm-preh</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tal vez</td>
<td>tahl behs</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>también</td>
<td>tahm-bee-yehn</td>
<td>also, too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tan</td>
<td>tahn</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarde</td>
<td>tahr-deh</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temprano</td>
<td>tehm-prah-noh</td>
<td>soon, early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
todavía  toh-dah-bee-yah still, yet
ya yah already

**POSITION OF ADVERBS**

In simple tenses (no helping verb), adverbs are generally placed directly after the verb they modify. Sometimes, however, the position of the adverb is variable and can be placed where you would logically put an English adverb:

- Generalmente, habla fluidamente. Generally, he speaks fluently.
- Frecuentemente escuché atentamente. I frequently listened attentively.

*Bien* and *mal* may precede the past participle:

- Está mal escrito. It’s poorly written.
- Hemos bien trabajado. We worked well.

---

**TIME’S UP!**

Rewrite each sentence by putting the correct adjectival form in parentheses in its proper place. Be careful, sometimes you will simply need to make the adjective agree and sometimes you will have to change it to an adverb:

**Example:** (fluida) Él habla. Él habla fluidamente.
(lindo) Ana es una niña. Ana es una niña linda.

1. (profundo) Él piensa.
2. (alegre) La señora López es una mujer.
3. (bueno) Es un hombre.
4. (frecuente) Hablan.
5. (demasiado) Ella compra vestidos.
6. (más) Necesito dinero.
7. (primero) Es la vez.
8. (fácil) Ellos trabajan.
9. (ciento) Necesito dólares.
10. (rápido) Ellos escriben.
Making Acquaintances

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Using reflexive verbs to present yourself
- Choosing the correct reflexive verb
- Discussing your origins
- Using possessives to speak about family and friends

In this chapter you’ll learn how to carry on a basic, introductory conversation in Spanish in which you can offer greetings, discuss your health, and speak about your origins and family members, using reflexive verbs properly as needed.
GREETINGS AND GOOD-BYES
When traveling in a foreign country, if you want to converse with a person whom you don’t know at all, a formal approach is mandatory. It is considered quite a mistake to address someone informally if a strong friendship or relationship has not been established. Be sure to start and end your conversations correctly by using the appropriate greetings and good-byes listed below.

**Formal Greetings and Good-Byes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>GREETING/GOOD-BYE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buenos días.</td>
<td>Hello.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buenas tardes.</td>
<td>Good afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Señor</td>
<td>Mr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Señora</td>
<td>Mrs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Señorita</td>
<td>Miss (Ms.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cómo se llama Ud.?</td>
<td>What’s your name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me llamo . . .</td>
<td>My name is . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucho gusto en conocerle.</td>
<td>I’m happy to meet you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le presento a . . .</td>
<td>I’d like you to meet . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cómo está Ud.?</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muy bien.</td>
<td>Very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bien.</td>
<td>All right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Así así.</td>
<td>So-so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adiós.</td>
<td>Good-bye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buenas noches.</td>
<td>Good night.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Informal Greetings and Good-Byes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>GREETING/GOOD-BYE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>¡Hola!</td>
<td>Hi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cómo te llamas?</td>
<td>What’s your name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me llamo . . .</td>
<td>My name is . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encantado(a).</td>
<td>Pleased to meet you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Te presento a . . .</td>
<td>I’d like you to meet . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adiós.                Bye.
¿Cómo estás?        How are you?
Bien.                Fine.
¿Cómo te va?        How’s it going?
¿Qué hay de nuevo?  What’s new?
Nada en particular. Nothing (much).
Hasta muy pronto.   See you very soon.
Hasta luego.         See you later.
Luego te veo.        I’ll be seeing you.
Hasta mañana.        See you tomorrow.

NOTE
The greeting *encantado* is an adjective and must agree in gender with the speaker. Use *encantado* if you are a man and *encantada* if you are a woman.

As a sign of respect, older Spanish women are generally referred to and addressed as *Señora*, regardless of their marital status. When in doubt, use *Señora*. *Señorita* is reserved for younger, unmarried women.

REFLEXIVE VERBS
A reflexive verb indicates that the action is performed by the subject upon itself: He bathes himself. The reflexive verb (in this example, *to bathe*) has a reflexive pronoun as its object (in this example, *himself*). Thus, the subject (which may be omitted in Spanish but which should be kept in mind) and the pronoun object refer to the same person or thing:

El muchacho se llama Juan. The boy’s name is Juan. (The boy is called Juan.)

(Él) se llama. His name is Juan. (He calls himself Juan.)

You can identify a reflexive verb by the addition of *se* at then end of the infinitive: for example, *llamarse* (to call oneself).

In many instances, you can use the same verb without the reflexive pronoun to perform the action *upon* or *for* someone else. The verb is then no longer reflexive.

Me llamo María. My name is Maria. (I call myself Maria.)

Llamo a María. I call Maria.
Some verbs that are generally not reflexive may be made reflexive by adding the reflexive pronoun:

- Yo hablo con Julio. I speak to Julio.
- Me hablo. I speak to myself.

Note the reflexive pronouns that are used with each subject and their placement immediately before the conjugated verb. All reflexive verbs must be preceded by these pronouns, which are directly tied to their subjects. The verb *sentirse* (*ie*) (to feel) will prove very useful when discussing your health. *Sentirse* is a stem-changing *e* to *ie* shoe verb, so expect to see that change in all forms except *nosotros* and *vosotros*. Below is the conjugation of the reflexive verb *sentirse*.

**sentirse**—to feel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>me siento (I feel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>te sientes (you feel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él</td>
<td>se siente (he feels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>nos sentimos (we feel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>os sentís (you feel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos</td>
<td>se sienten (they feel)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To answer the question “How are you?” (¿Cómo está Ud.? [formal] or ¿Cómo estás? [familiar]), respond:

- Me siento bien. I feel well.
- Me siento mal. I feel bad.
- Me siento mejor. I feel better.
- Me siento peor. I feel worse.

Some verbs are usually or always used reflexively in English and Spanish. The following list provides the most common reflexive verbs. Verbs with an asterisk (*) have spelling changes in the present tense and must be conjugated accordingly. Refer to Chapter 22:00 for the rules for these shoe verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*acostarse (ue)</td>
<td>to go to bed, to lay down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afeitarse</td>
<td>to shave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alegrarse</td>
<td>to be glad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bañarse</td>
<td>to bathe oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*despertarse (ie)</td>
<td>to wake up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*divertirse (ie)</td>
<td>to have fun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Choosing the Correct Reflexive Verb

Some verbs in Spanish have special meanings when used reflexively, so be careful to choose the verb you want to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>BASIC MEANING</th>
<th>REFLEXIVE MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aburrirse (se)</td>
<td>to bore</td>
<td>to become bored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acostarse (se) (ue)</td>
<td>to put to bed</td>
<td>to go to bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bañarse (se)</td>
<td>to bathe (someone)</td>
<td>to bathe oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cansarse (se)</td>
<td>to tire</td>
<td>to become tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engañarse (se)</td>
<td>to deceive</td>
<td>to be mistaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levantarse (se)</td>
<td>to raise (something)</td>
<td>to get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poner(se)</td>
<td>to put (something)</td>
<td>to put (something on), to become, to place oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentarse (se) (ie)</td>
<td>to seat</td>
<td>to sit down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some reflexive verbs are used idiomatically; that is, no logical grammatical explanation exists for the construction of these phrases. These verbs appear below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cepillarse (los dientes)</td>
<td>to brush one’s (teeth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>romperse (la pierna)</td>
<td>to break one’s (leg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irse</td>
<td>to go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacerse amigos</td>
<td>to become friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enfadarse con</td>
<td>to get angry with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>darse cuenta de</td>
<td>to realize</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following verbs are always used reflexively in Spanish, but not necessarily in English. An asterisk (*) denotes a verb with a spelling or stem change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*acordarse (ue) (de)</td>
<td>to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empeñarse (en)</td>
<td>to insist (on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fijarse (en)</td>
<td>to notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irse</td>
<td>to go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*negarse (ie) (de)</td>
<td>to refuse (to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olvidarse (de)</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parecerse (a)</td>
<td>to resemble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quejarse (de)</td>
<td>to complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*reírse (i) (de)</td>
<td>to laugh at</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reflexive verbs in the plural may express reciprocal action corresponding to each other and one another in English: Nos escribimos. (We write to each other.)

Note the use of uno a otro (una a otra) or el uno al otro (la una a la otra), which mean “each other”:

- Ellos se miran. They look at each other.
- Ellos se miran uno al otro. They look at each other.
- Paco y Ana se escriben el uno al otro. They write to each other.

Reflexive verbs in Spanish may be used to express the passive voice when the subject is a thing (not a person):

- Aquí se habla español. Spanish is spoken here.
- Se vende carne hoy. Meat is being sold today.

**Reflexive Verbs in Compound Tenses**

In compound tenses, the reflexive pronoun remains before the conjugated helping verb form of haber:

- Ella se ha lavado. She has washed herself.
- Ella se había lavado. She had washed herself.
Reflexive Verbs with Infinitives and Gerunds

When a subject is followed by a conjugated verb and an infinitive, or with estar + gerund, the reflexive pronoun may be placed either before the conjugated verb or after it and attached to the infinitive to which its meaning is linked:

I’m going to feel better.  \textit{Me} voy a sentir mejor.

Voy a sentir \textit{m}e mejor.

I’m combing my hair.  \textit{Me} estoy peinando.

Estoy peinándome.

When using the gerund that has one pronoun attached, a general rule of thumb is to count back three vowels and add an accent to get the correct stress. When two pronouns are attached, count back four vowels: \textit{Está lavándosela}. (He is washing it for himself.)

ORIGINS

It is only natural when you meet someone new to inquire about that person’s origins or to speak about your own. In order to speak correctly about coming \textit{from}, living \textit{in}, or traveling \textit{to} a country, city, state, or province, you need to learn these prepositions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Soy de California.  I’m from California.
Voy a San Juan.  I’m going to San Juan.

To formally ask a person where he or she is from, say: \textit{¿De dónde es Ud.?} (Where are you from?) To be informal, ask: \textit{¿De dónde eres?} (Where are you from?)

In Spanish most countries are not preceded by a definite article (el, la, los, or las), though a few are. Common everyday usage, however, tends
to omit the definite article even before those countries whose names show them. The only exceptions are *El Salvador* and *La República Dominicana*, because *El* and *La* are part of the country’s official name. There is no contraction of *a + el* when speaking about *El Salvador*.

Use the definite article with geographical names that are modified:

América es grande.

But:

La América del Sur es grande.

Voy a Guatemala.

Voy a El Salvador.

Refer to the following lists for the names of countries and continents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Countries</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>la Argentina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>el Brasil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>el Canadá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>la China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>la República Dominicana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td>el Ecuador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Salvador</td>
<td>El Salvador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>Inglaterra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>Francia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>Alemania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Grecia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>Haïti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>la India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>el Japón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>México</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama</td>
<td>Panamá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraguay</td>
<td>el Paraguay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Peru el Perú
Portugal Portugal
Russia Rusia
Spain España
Sweden Suecia
Switzerland Suiza
United States los Estados Unidos
Uruguay el Uruguay

Continents
Africa África
Antarctica Antártica
Asia Asia
Australia Australia
Europe Europa
North America Norte América, América del Norte
South America Sud América, América del Sur

Now you can answer these questions:

¿De dónde es Ud.? Soy de (los) Estados Unidos.
(Where are you from?) (I’m from the United States.)

¿Adónde va Ud.? Voy a España.
(Where are you going?) (I’m going to Spain.)

¿Dónde vive Ud.? Vivo en Grecia.
(Where do you live?) (I live in Greece.)

NATIONALITIES
When answering a question about your origin, remember to use an adjective that agrees in number and gender with the person or persons you are describing, as explained in Chapter 19:00.

¿Cuál es su nacionalidad? What’s your nationality?
Soy alemana. I’m German.
Somos americanos. We are Americans.
Nationalities ending in -és drop the accent from the e in the feminine singular and all plural forms. The adjectives of nationality are:

- inglés English
- escocés Scottish
- francés French
- irlandés Irish
- japonés Japanese
- portugés Portuguese

**NOTE**

Unlike in English, adjectives of nationality are not capitalized in Spanish.

**THE FAMILY**

When meeting new people, after you’ve introduced yourself, it often becomes necessary to present or refer to other members of your family. The following tables give you the names of family members you may need to know.

**Family Members: Males**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boyfriend</td>
<td>novio</td>
<td>husband</td>
<td>esposo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td>hermano</td>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>sobrino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
<td>cuñado</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>hijo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>niño</td>
<td>son-in-law</td>
<td>yerno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>primo</td>
<td>stepbrother</td>
<td>hermanastro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>padre</td>
<td>stepson</td>
<td>hijastro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>suegro</td>
<td>uncle</td>
<td>tío</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>abuelo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Family Members: Females**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aunt</td>
<td>tía</td>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>prima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>niña</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>hija</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90
SHOWING POSSESSION
To show possession, you may use the preposition de (of) or a possessive adjective.

Using *De*
English speakers use apostrophe’s (‘s) or s apostrophe (s’) after a noun to show possession. Because Spanish does not use apostrophes, a reverse construction is used: el padre de Marta (the father of Marta or Marta’s father). Note that in this construction the preposition de (of) is used to express relationship and possession.

If the possessor is referred to by a common noun, such as “the boy”—for example, “She is the boy’s mother”—then de contracts with the definite article el to express “of the”: Es la madre del muchacho.

Using Possessive Adjectives
Possessive adjectives, like other Spanish adjectives, agree with the nouns they modify (the person or thing that is possessed) and not with the subject (the person possessing them) and, therefore, serve as noun markers. The first table below summarizes the use of short possessive adjectives that precede the noun, and the second table summarizes the use of longer possessive adjectives that are used less frequently and follow the noun.

**Short Forms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEFORE MASCULINE NOUNS</th>
<th>BEFOERE FEMININE NOUNS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>mis</td>
<td>mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tus</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su</td>
<td>sus</td>
<td>su</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When you use a short possessive adjective, make note of the following:

- *Su* can mean “his,” “her,” or “their,” because the possessive adjective agrees with the noun it modifies, and not with the subject. Therefore, his mother = *su madre* because *su* agrees with the word *mother*, which is singular. *Su madre* can also mean *her mother* or *their mother*. You will know whether *su* means “his,” “her,” or “their” by the context of the conversation.

- Short possessive adjectives are used before *each* noun:
  
  - su hermana y su hermano  
  - mi hermano y tus primos

- With parts of the body or clothing, the possessive adjective is usually replaced with the definite article if the possessor is clear:
  
  - Ella se cepilla los dientes.  
  - Él se pone el sombrero.

The longer adjectives are used as follows:

- el hermano mío  
- el padre y la madre suyos  
- unas amigas tuyas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFTER</th>
<th>MASCULINE NOUNS</th>
<th>AFTER</th>
<th>FEMININE NOUNS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mío</td>
<td>míos</td>
<td>mía</td>
<td>mías</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuyo</td>
<td>tuyos</td>
<td>tuya</td>
<td>tuyas</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suyo</td>
<td>suyos</td>
<td>suya</td>
<td>suyas</td>
<td>his, her, your, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuestro</td>
<td>nuestros</td>
<td>nuestra</td>
<td>nuestras</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuestra</td>
<td>vuestras</td>
<td>vuestra</td>
<td>vuestras</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suyos</td>
<td>suyos</td>
<td>suya</td>
<td>suyas</td>
<td>their, your</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COUNTDOWN TO SPANISH

92
To avoid ambiguity, *su* (*sus*) and *suyo* (*suya, suyos, suyas*), may be replaced by the article and *de él* (*ella*), *de Ud.* (*Uds.*), or *de ellos* (*ellas*):

- el padre de ella  
  her father  
- una amiga de Uds.  
  one of your friends

You can now introduce someone using possessive adjectives:

Le (te) presento a mi hijo y a su esposa.  
I’d like you to meet my son and his wife.

Le (te) presento a un hijo mío y a su esposa.

**Using Possessive Pronouns**

A possessive pronoun replaces a possessive adjective + noun. The following pronouns agree in number and gender with the nouns they replace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el mío</td>
<td>la mía</td>
<td>los míos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el tuyo</td>
<td>la tuya</td>
<td>los tuyos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el suyo</td>
<td>la suya</td>
<td>los suyos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el nuestro</td>
<td>la nuestra</td>
<td>los nuestros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el vuestro</td>
<td>la vuestra</td>
<td>los vuestros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el suyo</td>
<td>la suya</td>
<td>los suyos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Este periódico es el suyo.  
This newspaper is his/hers.

Because the possessive pronoun agrees with the item possessed and not the possessor, the only way to distinguish between *his* and *hers* is to follow the conversation carefully.

Aquí está mi maleta.  
Here is my suitcase.

¿Dónde está la suya?  
Where is yours?

**Spanish expressions of relationship are:**

- a friend of mine, one of my friends, *un amigo mío*
- a nephew of his, one of his nephews, *un sobrino suyo*
- neighbors (f.) of theirs, some of their neighbors, *unas vecinas suyas*
By using the phrases presented at the beginning of this chapter with the correct possessive adjective, and by following them with the noun expressing the person being introduced, you can now have a very simple introductory conversation in Spanish. Do the following without looking back:

1. Greet someone.
2. State that you are pleased to meet them.
3. Give your name.
4. State your health.
5. Tell where you are from.
7. Give your nationality.
8. Name a country you are going to visit.
9. Introduce a family member.
10. Say good-bye.
Fielding Invitations and Other Questions

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Using verbs to extend invitations
- Using prepositions to join your thoughts
- Using prepositional pronouns to extend invitations
- Accepting, refusing, and showing indifference and indecision

In this chapter you’ll learn how to extend, accept, and tactfully refuse invitations to a variety of interesting and popular tourist attractions and sights.
VERBS FOR INVITATIONS

By far the easiest verb to use is desear (to want). It is a regular -ar verb and, therefore, quite easy to conjugate:

*desear—to want*

- yo deseo (I want)
- tú deseas (you want)
- él desea (he wants)
- nosotros deseamos (we want)
- vosotros deseáis (you want)
- ellos desean (they want)

You may also use the verb querer (to wish or to want) to extend an invitation. Remember, though, that querer requires an e to ie change within the shoe, while the nosotros and vosotros forms use the infinitive stem.

*querer—to want*

- yo quiero (I want)
- tú quieres (you want)
- él quiere (he wants)
- nosotros queremos (we want)
- vosotros queréis (you want)
- ellos quieren (they want)

You may also use the verb poder (to be able to, can) to ask whether someone is available. Keep in mind that poder also has a stem change within the shoe from o to ue and that the nosotros and vosotros forms follow the infinitive.

*poder—to be able to, can*

- yo puedo (I can)
- tú puedes (you can)
- él puede (he can)
- nosotros podemos (we can)
-vosotros podéis (you can)
- ellos pueden (they can)

You may use the idiomatic expression tener ganas de (to feel like) to ask what someone is in the mood to do. Remember that tener also has an irregular yo form: tengo and a stem change from e to ie for the tú, él, ella, Ud., ellos, ellas, and Uds. forms. The nosotros and vosotros forms follow the infinitive.

*tener—to have*

- yo tengo (I have)
- tú tienes (you have)
- él tiene (he has)
- nosotros tenemos (we have)
- vosotros tenéis (you have)
- ellos tienen (they have)
To extend an invitation, use the verbs discussed in this section, plus an infinitive, to form the invitation.

**FORMAL**

¿Ud. desea ir . . . ? Do you want to go . . . ?

¿Ud. pueden salir . . . ? Can you go out . . . ?

**INFORMAL**

¿Tú quieres ir . . . ? Do you want to go . . . ?

¿Tú puedes salir . . . ? Can you go out . . . ?

**PLURAL**

¿Uds. pueden ir . . . ? Can you go . . . ?

**PREPOSITIONS**

You can use prepositions to show the relationship of a noun to another word in a sentence. Prepositions come in handy when extending an invitation, as well as in common everyday situations.

The prepositions listed here can not only help you to offer a suggestion for something to do, but can also help you give or receive any necessary directions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>acerca de</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above, on top of</td>
<td>encima de</td>
<td>during</td>
<td>durante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according to</td>
<td>según</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>lejos de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>después (de)</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>por, para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>against</td>
<td>contra</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>alrededor de</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>a, en</td>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>delante de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the house of</td>
<td>en casa de</td>
<td>inside, within</td>
<td>dentro de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>antes (de)</td>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>en lugar de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>detrás de</td>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>en vez de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beneath, under</td>
<td>debajo de</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>besides</td>
<td>además de</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>entre</td>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>enfrente de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
outside of    fuera de  toward    hacia
over, above   sobre       until      hasta
near          cerca de    with       con
to            a           without    sin

**Prepositions That Require Special Attention**

**En and A.** The selection of the correct word for *at* when referring to a place may present some difficulty. The following explanations should help eliminate some of the confusion:

- *En* means inside, or within an enclosed or specific place. *Estamos en el aeropuerto.* **(We are at [inside] the airport.)**
- *A* refers to a general location where specific boundaries are not suggested or implied: *Vamos al aeropuerto.* **(We are going to the airport.)**

**A and De.** As seen above, the prepositions *a* (to) and *de* (from) are used when referring to places. It is important to contract *a* and *de* with the definite article *el* (the) as shown below before a masculine singular noun. *A* and *de* do not contract with *la, los,* or *las:*

\[
\begin{align*}
a + el &= al & \text{Van al cine.} & \text{They are going to the movies.} \\
de + el &= del & \text{Salen del cine.} & \text{They leave the movies.}
\end{align*}
\]

**Por and Para.** Because *por* and *para* have the same meaning in English, you will need to determine which to use by their Spanish context as shown in the following examples. *Por* is used in the following ways:

- To show motion:
  
  Pasé por la tienda.  I passed by the store.
  Entraron por la puerta. They came in through the door.
  Pasean por esa calle. They stroll along that street.

- To state means or manner:
  
  Lo necesito por escrito. I need it in writing.
  Lo envió por avión. He sent it by plane.

- To mean “in exchange for”: *Pagaré un dólar por eso.*
  (I’ll pay a dollar for that.)
• To show the duration of an action: Estuvo enfermo por un mes. (He was sick for a month.)
• To indicate an indefinite period of time: Me voy por la tarde. (I’m leaving in the afternoon.)
• To express “for the sake of” or “on behalf of”:
  Lo haré por Ud. I’ll do it for your sake.
  Lo haré por la familia. I’ll do it on behalf of the family.
• To give a reason or motive: Trabajo por necesidad. (I work out of necessity.)
• To express “per” or “by the”:
  Va al cine una vez por semana. He goes to the movies once a week.
  Son más baratos por docena. They are cheaper by the dozen.
• To state an opinion or estimation, equivalent to “for” or “as”:
  Me toman por profesora. They took me for a teacher.
  Se le conocía por Pedro. He was known as Pedro.
• To place the agent (doer) in a passive construction: Fue escrito por Juan. (It was written by Juan.)
• To mean “for” after the verbs enviar (to send), ir (to go), mandar (to order, send), preguntar (to ask), regresar (to return), venir (to come), and volver (to return):
  Fui (Envié, Pregunté) por el médico. I went for (sent for, asked for) the doctor.
  Vine (Regresé, Volví) por mis libros. I came (returned, came back) for my books.

Por is used in the following adverbial expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>por eso</td>
<td>therefore, so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por lo común</td>
<td>generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por lo general</td>
<td>generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por lo visto</td>
<td>apparently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por supuesto</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Para is used in the following ways:

- With a destination of a place or a direction: Salimos para México. (We are going to Mexico.)
- With the destination of a recipient: Este regalo es para Ud. (This gift is for you.)
- To express a time limit in the future: Lo necesito para mañana. (I need it for tomorrow.)
- To state a purpose or goal: Trabajo para vivir. (I work [in order] to live.)
- To show the use of an object: Es una caja para vestidos. (It's a box for clothing.)
- To make comparisons by expressing “for” or “considering that”: Para ser americano habla bien el español. (For being an American he speaks Spanish well.)

Note the following exceptions to these rules:

- When speaking about a means of transportation for a passenger, use en instead of por to express “by”:
  
  Voy a viajar en avión. I’m going to travel by plane.
  
  Envío la carta por avión. I’m sending the letter by plane.

- When using the verbs buscar (to look for), esperar (to wait for), and pedir (to ask for), do not use por or para, because the word for is already included in the meaning of the verb.

**PLACES**

If you are a traveler, student, or businessperson in the Spanish-speaking world, or if you happen to meet a Spanish speaker who needs assistance in your own hometown, you will find this list of place names quite useful.

- amusement park: el parque de atracciones
- beach: la playa
- cathedral: la catedral
- church: la iglesia
- circus: el circo
- department store: los grandes almacenes
- fair: la feria
- fountain: la fuente
- garden: el jardín
library
mall
movies
museum
nightclub
park
restaurant
theater
zoo

PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUNS
Prepositional pronouns are so named because they are pronouns that you use after prepositions. In many cases, prepositional pronouns are useful when you need to extend an invitation. The following table shows subject pronouns with their corresponding stress pronouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUN</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>mí</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>you (familiar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él</td>
<td>él</td>
<td>he, him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ella</td>
<td>ella</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ud.</td>
<td>Ud.</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>we, us (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>you (familiar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos</td>
<td>ellos</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellas</td>
<td>ellas</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uds.</td>
<td>Uds.</td>
<td>you (polite)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prepositional pronoun *sí* is used reflexively both in the singular and in the plural to express “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “themselves,” or “yourselves”: *Piensa para sí mismo.* (He thinks for himself.)

You can use prepositional pronouns in situations where you would like to extend an invitation, or in other everyday conversations as follows:
• The prepositional pronoun is used as the object of a preposition and always follows the preposition: *No es para ti; es para mí.* (It’s not for you; it’s for me.)

• The prepositional pronouns *mí, tí, and sí* combine with the preposition *con* as follows:

  conmigo with me
  contigo with you
  consigo with him/her/your(self), them/your(selves)

**EXTENDING AN INVITATION**

By combining all the elements presented so far in this chapter, you can now try to extend your own invitation.

1. Start with a verb in either its polite or familiar form:

   ¿Ud. quiere . . . ? ¿Tú quieres . . . ? Do you want . . . ?
   ¿Ud. puede . . . ? ¿Tú puedes . . . ? Can you . . . ?
   ¿Ud. desea . . . ? ¿Tú deseas . . . ? Do you wish . . . ?
   ¿Ud. tiene ganas de . . . ? ¿Tú tienes ganas de . . . ? Do you feel like . . . ?

2. Add an infinitive:

   *ir* to go
   *salir* to go out
   *venir* to come

3. Use the correct form of *a* + definite article followed by the name of a place:

   al cine to the movies
   a la playa to the beach
   a los parques to the parks
   a las iglesias to the churches

4. Add a preposition + a prepositional pronoun:

   conmigo with me
   con nosotros with us
Your final product should look and sound something like these examples:

¿Tú quieres ir a la playa conmigo?  Do you want to go to the beach with me?
¿Uds. quieren ir al cine con nosotros?  Do you want to go to the movies with us?

ACCEPTING AN INVITATION
Perhaps you receive an invitation that intrigues you. Saying yes is easy. Just nod your head and say, “Si” to show your eager acceptance. You may also use any of the phrases listed here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You bet!</td>
<td>¡Ya lo creo!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gladly.</td>
<td>¡Con mucho gusto!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great!</td>
<td>¡Fantástico!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you want to.</td>
<td>Si tu quieres./Si Ud. quiere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK./I agree.</td>
<td>De acuerdo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of course.</td>
<td>¡Por supuesto!/¡Claro!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you.</td>
<td>Gracias.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you.</td>
<td>Le (te) agradezco.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you very much.</td>
<td>Muchas gracias.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That’s a good idea.</td>
<td>Es una buena idea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With pleasure.</td>
<td>Con placer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To express the phrase “You’re welcome,” you can use De nada or No hay de qué.

REFUSING AN INVITATION
Saying no is more difficult because you must remain tactful. An invitation can be cordially and politely refused by expressing regrets and giving a valid excuse. You may need to use the following phrases in both formal and informal situations.
Unfortunately . . . Desgraciadamente . . .
I can’t. No puedo.
I don’t feel like it. No tengo ganas.
I don’t have the money. No tengo dinero.
I don’t have time. No tengo tiempo.
I don’t want to. No quiero.
I’m busy. Estoy ocupado(a).
I’m sorry. Lo siento.
I’m tired. Estoy cansado(a).
Perhaps some other time. Tal vez en otra ocasión.

In any of the expressions listed above that begin with I, you can change the subject to whatever is appropriate for the situation (they, we, etc.). Make sure, however, that when you do so, you also conjugate the verb and make the adjective agree with the new subject. (Refer to Chapter 22:00 for a refresher on the present tense of verbs.)

**EXPRESSING INDECISION AND INDIFFERENCE**
If you receive an invitation and are at a loss as to what to do, express your indecision or indifference by using the phrases listed here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I don’t know.</td>
<td>No sé.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It depends.</td>
<td>Depende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn’t matter.</td>
<td>No importa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perhaps./Maybe.</td>
<td>Quizás.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whatever you want.</td>
<td>Lo que prefiera(s).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NO**
You will sometimes need to use the simplest of all the Spanish negatives, *no*, which expresses “not.” In simple and compound sentences, *no* precedes the conjugated verb; in compound tenses, *no* precedes the helping verb:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPOUND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No estoy libre.</td>
<td>No he estado libre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not free.</td>
<td>I wasn’t free./I haven’t been free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(at a particular, specific moment in time)</td>
<td>(at a particular, specific moment in time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No estaba libre.</td>
<td>No había estado libre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wasn’t free.</td>
<td>I hadn’t been free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in general—at no specific moment)</td>
<td>(in general—at no specific moment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No estaré libre.</td>
<td>No habré estado libre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will not be free.</td>
<td>I will not have been free.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No estaría libre.</td>
<td>No habría estado libre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wouldn’t be free.</td>
<td>I wouldn’t have been free.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a sentence has two verbs, remember that *no* must precede the conjugated verb:

- No quiero ir al parque. I don’t want to go to the park.
- No podemos salir. We can’t go out.
- No van a viajar. They aren’t going to travel.

**No with Reflexive Verbs**

In simple and compound tenses, *no* precedes the reflexive pronoun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPOUND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No me divierto.</td>
<td>No nos hemos divertido.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not having a good time.</td>
<td>We have not had a good time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No te divertías.</td>
<td>No se había divertido.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You weren’t having a good time.</td>
<td>You hadn’t had a good time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No se divertirá.</td>
<td>No se habrán divertido.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He will not have a good time.</td>
<td>They will not have had a good time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No se divertiría.</td>
<td>No se habrían divertido.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She wouldn’t have a good time.</td>
<td>They wouldn’t have had a good time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When an infinitive is negated, *no* precedes the infinitive:

Yo decidí no venir.  I decided not to come.

Yo he decidido no levantarme temprano.  I decided not to get up early.

---

**TIME’S UP!**

1. Extend an invitation to a new acquaintance to go to a restaurant with you.
2. Extend an invitation to a friend to go to the circus with you and your family.
3. Accept an invitation to a nightclub.
4. Accept an invitation to visit a cathedral.
5. Refuse an invitation to a fair.
6. Refuse an invitation to the mall.
7. Give an excuse why you can’t go to the zoo.
8. Give an excuse why you can’t go the gardens.
9. Show indifference about going to the movies.
10. Show indecision about going to see the fountains.
Making Plans

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Using cardinal numbers
• Using ordinal numbers
• Expressing days, months, seasons, and dates
• Telling time

In this lesson you’ll learn the essentials for making plans: numbers, and how they are used to express the date and tell time; and how to combine these elements to plan an outing.
CARDINAL NUMBERS
The Spanish write two numbers differently than we do. The number one has a little hook on top: 1. In order to distinguish a one from the number seven, Spanish speakers put a line through the seven when they write it: 7.

In numerals and decimals, where English speakers use commas the Spanish use periods, and vice versa:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>3.000</td>
<td>$16.95</td>
<td>$16,95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0,75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carefully study the Spanish numbers presented here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>cero</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>veintiuno, veinte y uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>veinte y cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dos</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>treinta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>cuarenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>cuatro</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>cincuenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>cinco</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>sesenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>seis</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>setenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>ochenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ocho</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>noventa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nueve</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>ciento (cien)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>diez</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>ciento uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>doscientos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>doce</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>quinientos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>trece</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>mil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>catorce</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>dos mil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>quince</td>
<td>100.000</td>
<td>cien mil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>dieciséis, diez y seis</td>
<td>1.000.000</td>
<td>un millón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>diecisiete, diez y siete</td>
<td>2.000.000</td>
<td>dos millones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>dieciocho, diez y ocho</td>
<td>1.000.000.000</td>
<td>mil millones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>diecinueve, diez y nueve</td>
<td>2.000.000.000</td>
<td>dos mil millones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>veinte</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note the following about Spanish numbers:

- The conjunction *y* (and) is used only for numbers between 16 and 99:
  
  - 52  cincuenta y dos  
  - 152  ciento cincuenta y dos  

- The numbers 16–19 and 21–29 are most frequently written as one word. When this is done, the numbers 16, 22, 23, and 26 have accents on the last syllable:
  
  - 16  dieciséis  
  - 22  veintidós  
  - 23  veintitrés  
  - 26  veintiséis  

- In compounds of *ciento* (*doscientos, trescientos*), there must be agreement with a feminine noun:
  
  - doscientos muchachos  two hundred boys  
  - trescientas muchachas  three hundred girls  

- *Ciento* becomes *cien* before nouns and before the numbers *mil* and *millones*. Before all other numbers, *ciento* is used:
  
  - cien personas  one hundred people  
  - cien mil habitantes  one hundred thousand inhabitants  
  - cien millones de dólares  one billion dollars  
  - ciento cincuenta libros  one hundred and twenty books  

- *Uno* is used only when counting and becomes *un* before a masculine noun and *una* before a feminine noun:
  
  - uno, dos, tres . . .  one, two, three . . .  
  - un niño y una niña  a boy and a girl  
  - treinta y un hombres  thirty-one men  
  - veintiuna casas  twenty-one houses  

- *Un* is not used before *cien(to)* or *mil*, but it is used before *millón*. When *millón* is followed by a noun, put *de* between *millón* and the noun.
  
  - cien años  one hundred years  
  - ciento veinte alumnos  one hundred twenty students
mil años               one thousand years
un millón de dólares  a million dollars

NOTE
To express your age, use the idiomatic expression tengo . . . años, given in Chapter 22:00: Tengo veintiséis años. (I’m twenty-six years old.)

ORDINAL NUMBERS
Understanding ordinal numbers is very important when you are in an elevated building, such as an apartment house or a department store. Note that el sótano is the basement, la planta baja is the ground or main floor, and la primera planta or el primer piso is the first floor above ground level.

Carefully study these ordinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>primero</td>
<td>6th</td>
<td>sexto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>segundo</td>
<td>7th</td>
<td>séptimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>tercero</td>
<td>8th</td>
<td>octavo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>cuarto</td>
<td>9th</td>
<td>noveno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>quinto</td>
<td>10th</td>
<td>décimo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following about ordinal numbers:

• Spanish speakers use ordinal numbers only through the tenth. After that, cardinal numbers are used:
  
el sexto día  the sixth day
la segunda semana  the second week
Carlos Cuarto   Charles IV
la página doce  page 12
el siglo veinte  the twentieth century

• Ordinal numbers must agree in gender with the nouns they modify. Ordinal numbers are made feminine by changing the final o of the masculine form to a:
  
el cuarto día  the fourth day
la cuarta semana  the fourth week
• Primero and tercero drop their final o before a masculine singular noun:

el primer acto the first act
el tercer baile the third dance

But:

el siglo tercero the third century

• The Spanish ordinal numbers are abbreviated as follows:

primero(a): 1o(a) tercero(a): 3o(a)
primer: 1er tercer: 3er
segundo(a): 2o(a) cuarto(a): 4o(a)

NOTE

1. A cardinal number that replaces an ordinal number is always masculine, as número, a masculine word, is understood: la avenida once (Eleventh Avenue [avenue number eleven]).

2. In Spanish, cardinal numbers precede ordinal numbers: las cuatro primeras personas (the first four people).

DAYS, MONTHS, AND SEASONS

To express the date, you will need the names of the days of the week and months of the year. It will also be helpful to know the seasons. The days, months, and seasons are listed below. In Spanish all are masculine and are not capitalized unless they are used at the beginning of a sentence.

An important fact to remember if you have a lot of appointments in a Spanish-speaking country is that Spanish calendars start with Monday as the first day of the week.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DAY</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>lunes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>martes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>miércoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>jueves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>viernes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>sábado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>domingo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MONTH SPANISH
January enero
February febrero
March marzo
April abril
May mayo
June junio
July julio
August agosto
September septiembre
October octubre
November noviembre
December diciembre

SEASON SPANISH
winter el invierno
spring la primavera
summer el verano
autumn, fall el otoño

To express “on a certain day”, the Spanish language uses the definite article los: Los domingos me levanto tarde. (On Sundays, I wake up late.)

Use the preposition en to express “in” with months, and en + definite article for seasons: en julio (in July), en el verano (in the summer).

DATES
The following list gives you a few date-related words you will need when making plans.

WORD/EXPRESSION SPANISH
a day un día
a week una semana
a month un mes
a year un año
in en
Dates in Spanish are expressed as follows; the definite article *el* is optional: day + (*el*) + cardinal number (except for *primero*) + *de* + month + *de* + year: *lunes* (*el*) *once* *de julio* *de dos mil* (Monday, July 11, 2000).

Note the following when expressing a date:

- The first of each month is expressed by *primero*. Cardinal numbers are used for all other days:
  
  *el primero de abril* = April 1st
  *el dos de mayo* = May 2nd

- Years are expressed in thousands and hundreds, not in hundreds as they are in English:
  
  *1999* = *mil novecientos noventa y nueve*  
  *one thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine*

- When writing the date in numbers, Spanish follows the sequence: day + month + year:
  
  *el 12 de enero de 2003 = 12/1/03*  
  *January 12, 2003 = 1/12/03*
• The English word *on* is expressed by *el* in Spanish dates:

  Llego el dos de abril.  
  I’m arriving on April 2nd.

  Te veré el viernes.  
  I’ll see you on Friday.

To get information about the date or the date of an event, you need the following questions and answers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What day is today?</td>
<td>¿Qué día es hoy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—Today is . . .</td>
<td>—Hoy es . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s today’s date?</td>
<td>¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—Today is . . .</td>
<td>—Hoy es . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s today’s date?</td>
<td>¿A cuánto estamos hoy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—It is . . .</td>
<td>—Estamos a . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is the date of the . . . ?</td>
<td>¿Cuál es la fecha del (de la, de los, de las) . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When do (does) the . . . begin?</td>
<td>¿Cuándo empieza(n) . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When do (does) the . . . end?</td>
<td>¿Cuándo termina(n) . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What day(s) is (are) the . . . open?</td>
<td>¿Qué día(s) está(n) abierto(a)(s) . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What day(s) is (are) the . . . closed?</td>
<td>¿Qué día(s) está(n) cerrado(a)(s) . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

The adjectives *abierto* and *cerrado* must agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify:

| ¿Qué día está cerrado el museo? | What day is the museum closed? |
| ¿Qué días están abiertas las bibliotecas? | What days are the libraries open? |

**TELLING TIME**

When making plans, you need to know at what time you will meet and when an event is going to take place. The following will help you ask and answer the appropriate questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>¿Qué hora es?</td>
<td>Es (Son) . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time is it?</td>
<td>It is . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
¿A qué hora empieza(n) . . . ?  A . . .
At what time does . . . start?  At . . .

¿A qué hora termina(n) . . . ?  A . . .
At what times does . . . end?  At . . .

¿A qué hora nos reunimos?  A . . .
At what time shall we meet?  At . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIME</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1:00</td>
<td>la una</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:05</td>
<td>las dos y cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:10</td>
<td>las tres y diez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:15</td>
<td>las cuatro y cuarto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:20</td>
<td>las cinco y veinte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:25</td>
<td>las seis y veinticinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30</td>
<td>las siete y media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:35</td>
<td>las ocho menos veinticinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:40 (20 minutes to 9:00)</td>
<td>las nueve menos veinte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:45</td>
<td>un cuarto para las diez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:50 (10 minutes to 11)</td>
<td>las once menos diez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:55 (5 minutes to 12)</td>
<td>las doce menos cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon</td>
<td>el mediodía</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>la medianoche</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To express time properly, remember the following:

- Use *es* for “it is” when it is one o’clock. Because they are plural, for the other numbers, use *son*:

  Es la una.  It’s one o’clock.

  Son las dos y media.  It’s half past two./It’s 2:30.

- Use *a la* for one o’clock and *a las* for every other hour to express “at” (at the specific time):
Me voy a la una. I’m leaving at one o’clock.
Va a llegar a las cinco y cuarto. He’s going to arrive at a quarter after five.

- Use y and the number of minutes to express the time after the hour (before half past): Es la una y veinte. (It’s one twenty./It’s 1:20.)
- To express time before the next hour (after half past), use menos + the number of the following hour: Son las cinco menos veinte. (It’s twenty minutes to five./It’s 4:40.)

Time before the hour may also be expressed by faltar + minutes + para + the following hour: Faltan veinte minutos para las cinco. (It’s twenty minutes to five./It’s 4:40.)

You will commonly hear the time expressed numerically, as follows: Son las dos y cuarenta y cinco. (It’s two forty-five./It’s 2:45.)

Because media (half) is used as an adjective, it agrees with hora (hour). Cuarto (quarter) is used as a noun and shows no agreement:

| Es la una y media. | It’s half past one. |
| Es la una y cuarto. | It’s quarter after one. |

When making plans, keep the following questions in mind. You may mix and match the elements in the list to get a correct sentence. Use the forms below when you know the person well. To be polite, use the Ud. form, as shown in Chapter 17:00.

| ¿A qué hora . . . ? | At what time . . . ? |
| ¿Cuándo . . . ? | When . . . ? |
| Debes . . . | You have to . . . |
| Puedes . . . | You can . . . |
| Quieres . . . | You want . . . |
| ¿Deseas . . . ? | Do you want . . . ? |
| ¿Tienes ganas de . . . ? | Do you feel like . . . ? |
| regresar | (to) return (come back) |
| ir | (to) go |
| salir | (to) go out |
| volver | (to) return |
¿Cuándo quieres salir?  When do you want to go out?
¿A qué hora puedes salir?  At what time can you leave?

Studying the expressions presented here will help you better understand expressions with time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a second</td>
<td>un segundo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a minute</td>
<td>un minuto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an hour</td>
<td>una hora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the morning (A.M.)</td>
<td>por la mañana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the afternoon (P.M.)</td>
<td>por la tarde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the evening (P.M.)</td>
<td>por la noche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at what time?</td>
<td>¿a qué hora?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at exactly 2:00</td>
<td>a las dos en punto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a quarter of an hour</td>
<td>un cuarto de hora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a half hour</td>
<td>una media hora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in an hour</td>
<td>en una hora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a while</td>
<td>dentro de un rato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until 3:00</td>
<td>hasta las tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before 4:00</td>
<td>antes de las cuatro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after 5:00</td>
<td>después de las cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since what time?</td>
<td>¿desde qué hora?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since 6:00</td>
<td>desde las seis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an hour ago</td>
<td>hace una hora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>temprano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>tarde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late (in arriving)</td>
<td>de retraso</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

In public announcements, such as timetables, the official 24-hour system is commonly used, with midnight as the zero hour:

0 h 40 = 12:40 A.M.  16 horas = 4:00 P.M.  21 h 45 = 9:45 P.M.
TIME’S UP!

1. Tell how old you are.

2. Ask for today's date.

3. Express your birth date.

4. Ask what days the museum is closed.

5. Express the season we are in.

6. Give today's date.

7. Ask your friend when he/she wants to go out?

8. Say what time it is.

9. Ask at what time we'll be getting together.

10. Say when the movie (la película) begins.
Using Spanish Around the Home

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Using *deber*
- Getting help around the house and in a store
- Understanding and forming the present subjunctive
- Using the subjunctive
- Using the imperfect, the perfect, and the pluperfect subjunctive and offering encouragement

In this chapter you’ll learn how to express school and household obligations by using the verb *deber* (to have to), the idiomatic expression *tener que*, or the subjunctive mood. You’ll also learn how to encourage someone to pursue a course of action.
HOUSE AND HOME

In order to refer to the different rooms and parts of a house that might need attention, you’ll need the vocabulary in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOM/PLACE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ROOM/PLACE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>el edificio</td>
<td>floor</td>
<td>el suelo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building</td>
<td>de pisos</td>
<td>floor (story)</td>
<td>el piso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>el apartamento</td>
<td>garage</td>
<td>el garaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attic</td>
<td>el entretecho</td>
<td>ground floor</td>
<td>la planta baja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backyard</td>
<td>el jardín</td>
<td>house</td>
<td>la casa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balcony</td>
<td>el balcón</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>la cocina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basement</td>
<td>el sótano</td>
<td>laundry room</td>
<td>la lavandería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>el cuarto de baño</td>
<td>lawn</td>
<td>el césped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>el dormitorio</td>
<td>living room</td>
<td>la sala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closet</td>
<td>el armario</td>
<td>shower</td>
<td>la ducha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>la puerta</td>
<td>stairs</td>
<td>la escalera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>el ascensor</td>
<td>window</td>
<td>la ventana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireplace</td>
<td>la chimenea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Naturally, within each room of a home there are pieces of furniture and appliances that may also need your attention. The following list gives you the names of the necessary equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FURNITURE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>FURNITURE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>la cama</td>
<td>microwave oven</td>
<td>el microondas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>la silla</td>
<td>mirror</td>
<td>el espejo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock</td>
<td>el reloj</td>
<td>oven</td>
<td>el horno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes dryer</td>
<td>la secadora</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
<td>el refrigerador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>la computadora</td>
<td>sofa</td>
<td>el sofá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dresser</td>
<td>la cómoda</td>
<td>stereo</td>
<td>el estéreo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freezer</td>
<td>el congelador</td>
<td>stove</td>
<td>la estufa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>los muebles</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>la mesa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamp</td>
<td>la lámpara</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>el televisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHORES
Among the most common household chores are those listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHORE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clean the house</td>
<td>limpiar la casa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>cocinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the dishes</td>
<td>lavar los platos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the laundry</td>
<td>lavar la ropa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go shopping</td>
<td>ir de compras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iron</td>
<td>planchar la ropa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the beds</td>
<td>hacer (tender) las camas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mow the lawn</td>
<td>cortar el cesped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set the table</td>
<td>poner la mesa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw out the garbage</td>
<td>sacar la basura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacuum</td>
<td>pasar la aspiradora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash the car</td>
<td>lavar el coche</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STORES
Learn the names of the food stores, as well as the other establishments listed in the following table. You might like to visit them while in a Spanish-speaking country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STORE/PRODUCT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRODUCT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bakery/bread</td>
<td>la panadería</td>
<td>el pan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bookstore/books</td>
<td>la librería</td>
<td>los libros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher shop/meat</td>
<td>la carnicería</td>
<td>la carne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dairy store/milk</td>
<td>la lechería</td>
<td>la leche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish store/fish</td>
<td>la pescadería</td>
<td>el pescado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>florist/flowers</td>
<td>la florería</td>
<td>las flores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit store/fruits</td>
<td>la frutería</td>
<td>las frutas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grocery/vegetables</td>
<td>la abastecería (el abasto)</td>
<td>los vegetales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newsstand/newspapers</td>
<td>el puesto de periódicos</td>
<td>los periódicos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharmacy/medicine</td>
<td>la farmacia</td>
<td>los medicamentos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Remember that if you want to say that you are going to a store or that you’ll be at a store, you must use a + definite article. Note that a + el = al. The other possibilities are a la, a los, or a las: al estanco, a la panadería.

To express that you are going to a store, use the form of ir that agrees with the subject and a with the appropriate definite article and noun:

- Voy a la lechería. I’m going to the dairy.
- Vamos al puesto de periódicos. We’re going to the newsstand.

**Getting Help in a Store**

An employee in any type of store may ask you one of these questions to find out if you need assistance:

- May I help you? ¿Puedo ayudarle a Ud.?
- How can I help you? ¿En que puedo servirle?
- What can I offer you? ¿Qué se le ofrece?

An appropriate answer would be:

- No, thanks. I’m just browsing. No, gracias. Estoy mirando solamente.
- Yes, please. I would like to see . . . Sí, por favor. Quisiera ver . . .
- Yes. I’d like to buy . . . for . . . Sí, quisiera comprar . . . para . . .
- Yes, I’m looking for (I need) . . . Sí, estoy buscando (Necesito) . . .
- Are there any sales? ¿Hay gangas?
- Are your prices reduced? ¿Hay una buena rebaja de precios?

After being helped, you might hear the salesperson ask:

- Anything else? ¿Qué más?
- ¿Algo más?

Unless you need to continue with an order or explain other needs, you can respond: No, gracias. Me quedo con éste (ésta). (No, thank you. I’ll take this.)

**DEBER (TO HAVE TO)**

The verb deber expresses what the subject should do:

- yo debo
- nosotros debemos
tú debes
él debe
vosotros debéis
ellos deben

Uses of Deber
Deber has some special uses when you want to persuade someone to do something and when it expresses an obligation:

- *Deber* is used primarily to express obligation:
  
  Debo salir. I have to leave.
  I must leave.
  I am supposed to leave.
  I should leave.

- *Deber de* + infinitive is used to express probability:
  
  Debe de estar atrasado. He must be late.
  He is probably late.

- *Debe* in the imperfect + de + infinitive may also be used to express probability in the past: Debió de estar atrasado. (He must have been late.)

- The imperfect subjunctive of *deber* means *ought to* or *should*, and expresses obligation (for more on the imperfect subjunctive see “The Imperfect Subjunctive,” “The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,” and “Offering Encouragement” later in this chapter):
  
  Debieras ir de compras. You should go shopping.
  You ought to go shopping.

- *Deber* means to owe when followed by a noun: *Le debo cinco dólares a Juan.* (I owe John five dollars.)

**TENER QUE**
Like *deber*, you can use the irregular verb *tener* + *que* + infinitive to express obligation:

- Yo tengo que trabajar. I have to work.
- Tú tienes que lavar el coche. You have to wash the car.
- Él tiene que poner la mesa. He has to set the table.
Nosotros tenemos que cocinar. We have to cook.
Vosotros tenéis que lavar la ropa. You have to do the laundry.
Ellos tienen que ir de compras. They have to go shopping.

**HAY QUE + INFINITVE**

*Hay que* + infinitive is used in a general way to express what people must do:

- Hay que comer para vivir. You have to eat to live.
- Hay que llegar a tiempo. You have to arrive on time.

**UNDERSTANDING AND FORMING THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

Like the conditional, the subjunctive is a mood (a form of the verb showing the subject’s attitude), not a tense (a form of the verb showing time). You may use the subjunctive to persuade someone to follow a course of action because it shows, among other things, wishing and wanting, need and necessity, and feelings and emotions. The subjunctive is used much more frequently in Spanish than in English.

Because the subjunctive is not a tense, the present subjunctive can be used to refer to actions in the present or the future. The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive refer to a completed past action.

- Es necesario que él trabaje. It is necessary for him to work./ He has to work.
- Es posible que ellas lleguen a tiempo. It’s possible that they will arrive on time.
- Lamenté que Ud. haya esperado. I was sorry that you waited.

The following conditions must be present if the subjunctive is to be used:

- The sentence usually must contain two different clauses with two different subjects.
- The clauses must be joined by *que* (that), which is followed by the subjunctive.
- Among other things, the main clause must show need, necessity, emotion, or doubt.
The Subjunctive of Regular Verbs
To form the present subjunctive of regular verbs, and many irregular verbs, drop the -o from the first person singular indicative (yo) form of the present and add the subjunctive endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB TYPE</th>
<th>YO</th>
<th>TÚ</th>
<th>ÉL</th>
<th>NOSOTROS</th>
<th>VOSOTROS</th>
<th>ELLOS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ar verbs</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-emos</td>
<td>-éis</td>
<td>-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er verbs</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-amos</td>
<td>-áis</td>
<td>-an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ir verbs</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-amos</td>
<td>-áis</td>
<td>-an</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The next table shows how this is done.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-AR VERBS</th>
<th>-ER VERBS</th>
<th>-IR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lavar (to wash)</td>
<td>comer (to eat)</td>
<td>abrir (to open)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo lavo</td>
<td>yo como</td>
<td>yo abre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo laves</td>
<td>yo comas</td>
<td>yo abras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú laves</td>
<td>tú comas</td>
<td>tú abras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él lave</td>
<td>él coma</td>
<td>él abra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros lavemos</td>
<td>nosotros comamos</td>
<td>nosotros abramos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros lavéis</td>
<td>vosotros comáis</td>
<td>vosotros abráis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos laven</td>
<td>ellos coman</td>
<td>ellos abran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the endings are the reverse of the present tense endings, which can be found in Chapter 22:00: ar to e; er and ir to a.

Verbs Irregular in the Yo Form
The following table shows verbs that are irregular only in the yo form of the present tense and form the present subjunctive accordingly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>YO FORM</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE STEM AND ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>escoger (to choose)</td>
<td>escojo</td>
<td>escoj (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conocer (to know)</td>
<td>conozco</td>
<td>conozc (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destruir (to destroy)</td>
<td>destruyo</td>
<td>destruy (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer (to do, make)</td>
<td>hago</td>
<td>hag (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oír (to hear)</td>
<td>oigo</td>
<td>oig (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poner (to put)</td>
<td>pongo</td>
<td>pong (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

125
salir (to leave) salgo salg (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)
traer (to bring) traigo traig (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)
valer (to be worth) valgo valg (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)
venir (to come) vengo veng (-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an)

**Spelling Changes in the Present Subjunctive**

In the present subjunctive, the following spelling changes are made:

- **-car verbs**: change c to qu
- **-gar verbs**: change g to gu
- **-zar verbs**: change z to c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>YO FORM STEM</th>
<th>PRETERIT</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE STEM AND ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buscar</td>
<td>busqué</td>
<td>busqu (-e,-es,-e,-emos,-éis,-en)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pagar</td>
<td>pagué</td>
<td>pagu (-e,-es,-e,-emos,-éis,-en)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruzar</td>
<td>crucé</td>
<td>cruc (-e,-es,-e,-emos,-éis,-en)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that these verbs have the same spelling changes as they did in the **yo** form of the preterite (see Chapter 21:00).

**Stem-Changing Verbs in the Present Subjunctive**

Stem-changing -ar, -er, and -ir verbs may or may not have the same stem changes in the present subjunctive as they do in the present indicative. Note: Changes in the stem occur in all persons, except the first- and second-person plural (nosotros, vosotros).

**-ar and -er Verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E TO IE</th>
<th>YO STEM</th>
<th>NOSOTROS/ VOSOTROS STEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cerrar (to close)</td>
<td>yo cierro</td>
<td>cier-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>querer (to want)</td>
<td>yo quiero</td>
<td>quier-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>O TO UE</th>
<th>YO STEM</th>
<th>NOSOTROS/ VOSOTROS STEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contar (to tell)</td>
<td>yo cuento</td>
<td>cuent-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volver (to return)</td>
<td>yo vuelvo</td>
<td>vuelv-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### -ir Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>E TO IE YO STEM</th>
<th>NOSOTROS/ VOSOTROS STEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sentir (to regret)</td>
<td>yo siento</td>
<td>sient-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormir (to sleep)</td>
<td>yo duermo</td>
<td>duerm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedir (to ask)</td>
<td>yo pido</td>
<td>pid-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the accent marks in some -iar and -uar verbs in all forms except nosotros:

- enviar (to send): yo envío env(-íe, -íes, -íe, -ímos, -íais, -íen)
- continuar (to continue): yo continúo contin(-úe, -úes, -úe, -uemos, -uéis, -úen)

### Verbs Irregular in the Subjunctive

Some verbs follow no rules for the formation of the subjunctive and must be memorized. The ones that are used the most frequently are:

- **dar** (to give): dé, des, dé, demos, deis, den
- **estar** (to be): esté, estés, esté, estemos, estéis, estén
- **haber** (to have): haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan
- **ir** (to go): vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan
- **saber** (to know): sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan
- **ser** (to be): sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean

### Expressions of Need and Necessity

The subjunctive may be used to persuade someone of the need or necessity to do something or to make requests or demands. The expressions below are typically followed by the subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Es mejor que . .</td>
<td>It is better that . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Más vale que . .</td>
<td>It is better that . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Es importante que .</td>
<td>It is important that . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Es necesario que .</td>
<td>It is necessary that .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Es preferible que . . . It is preferable that . . .
Es tiempo que . . . It is time that . . .
Es urgente que . . . It is urgent that . . .
Es útil que . . . It is useful that . . .

Es importante que vayas al supermercado. It is important you go to the supermarket.
Es urgente que hable al médico por teléfono. It’s urgent that he call the doctor.

Be aware that the Spanish subjunctive may have many different meanings in English and will often not allow for an exact, word-for-word translation:

Es necesario que pongas la mesa. You have to set the table.
It is necessary that you set the table.

In Spanish, the subjunctive is often equivalent to an infinitive in English: 
Quiero que tú vayas de compras. (I want you to go to the store.)

Verbs of Wishing and Wanting
The subjunctive is often used after the verbs listed below:

decir to tell, say

ojalá if only . . .
desar to desire, wish, want

pedir to ask for, request
esperar to hope

permitir to permit
hacer to make, cause

preferir to prefer
insistir to insist

querer to wish, want
mandar to command, order

Él pide que yo haga el trabajo. He asks that I do the work.

Prefiero que tú vayas a la farmacia. I prefer you to go to the pharmacy.

When using the subjunctive in English, we often omit the word that. In Spanish however, que must always be used to join the two clauses:

Es importante que él lave el coche. It’s important that he wash the car.

Quiero que tú cortes el césped. I want you to mow the lawn.
Avoiding the Subjunctive

In all of the examples shown thus far, the verb in the dependent clause (where the subjunctive is used) and the verb in the main clause (need, necessity, wishing, or wanting) have different subjects. If the subjects in both clauses are the same, *que* is omitted and the infinitive replaces the subjunctive:

Ella quiere que yo vaya a la panadería. She wants me to go to the bakery.

Ella quiere ir a la panadería. She wants to go to the bakery.

The verbs *dejar* (to allow), *hacer* (to make, do), *mandar* (to order), *permitir* (to permit), and *prohibir* (to forbid) may be followed by either the subjunctive or the infinitive:

Me mandan que salga. They order me to leave.

Me mandan salir.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive is used in the dependent clause (the clause after *que*) when the verb in the main clause is in the past. For the verbs *deber* and *querer*, the imperfect subjunctive form may be used to express the conditional:

Le mandaron que saliera. They ordered him to leave.

Debieras ir a España. You should go to Spain.

Quisiera trabajar. I would like to work.

The imperfect subjunctive of all verbs is formed by dropping the -*ron* ending of the third person plural (*ellos*) of the preterite tense and adding either of the endings below. Either is correct as long as they are used consistently:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>ENDING</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>ENDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>-ra</td>
<td></td>
<td>-se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tú</td>
<td>-ras</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>él</td>
<td>-ra</td>
<td></td>
<td>-se</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nosotros</td>
<td>-´ramos</td>
<td></td>
<td>-´semos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vosotros</td>
<td>-rais</td>
<td></td>
<td>-seis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ellos</td>
<td>-ran</td>
<td></td>
<td>-sen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The nosotros form of the imperfect subjunctive has an accent on the vowel immediately before the ending, whether you use the -ra ending or the -se ending.

The following table shows how to form the imperfect subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PRETERIT</th>
<th>IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Third Person Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| hablar     | hablaron | hablara, hablaras, hablara,  
|            |          | habláramos, hablarais, hablan |
|            |          | OR                     |
|            |          | hablase, hablases, hablase,  
|            |          | hablásemos, hablaseis, hablasen |
| vender     | vendieron | vendiera, vendieras, vendiera,  
|            |          | vendiéramos, vendierais, vendieran |
|            |          | OR                     |
|            |          | vendiese, vendieses, vendiese,  
|            |          | vendiésemos, vendieseis, vendiesen |
| abrir      | abrieron | abriera, abrieras, abriera,  
|            |          | abriéramos, abrierais, abrieran |
|            |          | OR                     |
|            |          | abriese, abrieses, abriese,  
|            |          | abriésemos, abrieseis, abriesen |

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are formed in the same manner as other compound tenses. Take the present subjunctive form of the helping verb haber (haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan) to form the perfect subjunctive, and take the imperfect subjunctive of haber (hubiera/hubiese; hubieras/hubieses; hubiera/hubiese; hubiéramos/hubiésemos; hubierais/hubieseis; hubieran/hubiesen) to form the pluperfect subjunctive and add the past participle:
Es importante que Uds. lo hayan visto. It is important that you have seen it.

Era importante que Uds. lo hubieran (hubiesen) visto. It was important that you had seen it.

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are compound forms expressing actions completed in the past. The perfect subjunctive expresses what the subject has done, while the imperfect subjunctive expresses what the subject had done. The verb in the main clause may be in the present tense.

**OFFERING ENCOURAGEMENT**

We have seen how the subjunctive can be used to convince someone to follow a course of action. The best way to persuade someone to do something, whether it be a chore or a fun activity, is to offer a bit of encouragement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A little more effort!</td>
<td>¡Un poquito más de esfuerzo!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t hesitate!</td>
<td>¡No vacile!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go for it!</td>
<td>¡Vaya por eso!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep going!</td>
<td>¡Continúe!/¡Siga!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have to try!</td>
<td>¡Tiene que tratar!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’re almost there!</td>
<td>¡Casi está allí!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’re getting there!</td>
<td>¡Ya está llegando!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of the phrases of encouragement can be changed to familiar commands by changing to the *tú* command form, which you will learn in the next chapter.

You’re almost there! ¡Ya casi llegas!

Continue! ¡Continúa!
TIME’S UP!

Express the following things to someone:

1. You are just browsing (in a store).
2. You’d like to buy a car for your family.
3. He/she has to listen.
4. He/she is supposed to go to the bakery.
5. He/she ought to make the beds.
6. He/she owes you five dollars.
7. It is necessary to go shopping.
8. You want him/her to throw out the garbage.
9. You want to go to the bookstore.
10. Encourage someone to wash the car.
Offering Ideas and Issuing Commands

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Making proposals
• Giving commands
• Getting there
• Using idioms

In this lesson you'll learn how to be persuasive when you make suggestions and how to use commands to give and receive directions.
MAKING PROPOSALS

In English, to persuade someone to do something or go somewhere you ask, “How about . . . ?” or you use the contraction “Let’s.” Other expressions that allow you to make suggestions can also be quite idiomatic and, therefore, cannot be translated word for word from English to Spanish. There are several ways to get around this problem.

- To express “Why don’t we . . . ?” use ¿Por qué no + the present tense nosotros form of the verb: ¿Por qué no vamos a España? (Why don’t we go to Spain?)
- Use tener ganas de + an infinitive to ask what a person feels like doing: ¿Tiene(s) ganas de ir a España? (Do you feel like going to Spain?)
- Use querer + an infinitive of a verb to ask if a person wants to do something: ¿Quiere(s) ir a España? (Do you want to go to Spain?)
- Use vamos a + an infinitive to make a suggestion similar to the English contraction “Let’s”: Vamos a ir a España. (Let’s go to Spain.)
- Use the nosotros form of the present subjunctive of the verb to also express “Let’s”: Vayamos a España. (Let’s go to Spain.)

COMMANDS

Commands are very useful for directing people to locations. The subject of a command is understood to be you, because you are being told where to go or what to do.

Remember, there are four ways to say you in Spanish and you must always use the polite forms (Ud., Uds.) when you don’t know the other party:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Familiar</td>
<td>tÚ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>Ud.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Polite Commands

To form polite commands with regular verbs:

1. Take the yo form of the present tense and drop the final -o.
2. For infinitives ending in -ar, add -e for the singular and -en for the plural command.
3. For infinitives ending in -er or -ir, add -a for the singular and -an for the plural.
Verbs with irregular *yo* forms follow the same rules for forming commands as regular verbs:

- **tener**: tiene, tenga, tengan — have
- **decir**: diga, digan — tell

The following verbs are irregular:

- **dar**: doy, dé, den — give
- **ir**: voy, vaya, vayan — go
- **ser**: soy, sea, sean — be

The subject pronoun may or may not be used with commands in Spanish:

- Vuelva (Ud.). — Return.
- Vengan (Uds.). — Come.

To make a command negative, simply put *no* in front of the verb: *No hable* (Ud.). (Don’t speak.)

**Familiar Commands**

Affirmative and negative familiar commands are formed in different ways:

- The singular affirmative *tú* command is formed by dropping the final *s* from the present tense, *tú* form of the verb.
  
  Hablas. — Habla.

- The plural affirmative *vosotros* command is formed by dropping the final *r* from the infinitive and adding *d*.
  
  Habla*. — Hablad.

- The negative *tú* and *vosotros* command forms are identical to the corresponding present subjunctive forms (see Chapter 15:00).
  
  No hables. — No habléis.
The table below illustrates the formation of the familiar commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hablar</td>
<td>habla (tú)</td>
<td>no hables (tú)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hablad (vosotros)</td>
<td>no habléis (vosotros)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comer</td>
<td>come (tú)</td>
<td>no comas (tú)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>comed (vosotros)</td>
<td>no comáis (vosotros)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escribir</td>
<td>escribe (tú)</td>
<td>no escribas (tú)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>escribid (vosotros)</td>
<td>no escribáis (vosotros)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Irregular Commands**

Irregular commands occur only in the affirmative singular tú form. All other command forms are regular as shown here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decir (to tell)</td>
<td>di/decid</td>
<td>no digas/digáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer (to do)</td>
<td>haz/haced</td>
<td>no hagas/hagáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir (to go)</td>
<td>ve/id</td>
<td>no vayas/vayáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poner (to put)</td>
<td>pon/poned</td>
<td>no pongas/pongáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salir (to leave)</td>
<td>sal/salid</td>
<td>no salgas/salgáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ser (to be)</td>
<td>sé/sed</td>
<td>no seas/seáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tener (to have)</td>
<td>ten/tened</td>
<td>no tengas/tengáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valer (to be worth)</td>
<td>val/valed</td>
<td>no valgas/valgáis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venir (to come)</td>
<td>ven/venid</td>
<td>no vengas/vengáis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refer to the following for the high-frequency verbs you will need in order to give and receive directions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECTION</th>
<th>TÚ/VOSOTROS</th>
<th>UD./UDS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continue</td>
<td>Continúa/Continuad</td>
<td>Continúe/Continúen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not continue</td>
<td>No continúes/continuéis</td>
<td>No continúe/continúen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross</td>
<td>Cruza/Cruzad</td>
<td>Cruce/Cruce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not cross</td>
<td>No cruces/cruceís</td>
<td>No cruce/cruceen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Get off  Baja/Bajad  Baje/Bajen
Do not get off  No bajes/bajéis No baje/bajen
Go down  Baja/Bajad  Baje/Bajen
Do not go down  No bajes/bajéis No baje/bajen
Go up  Sube/Subid  Suba/Suban
Do not go up  No subas/subáis No suba/suban
Go  Ve/IId  Vaya/Vayan
Do not go  No vayas/vayáis No vaya/vayan
Pass  Pasa/Pasad  Pase/Pasen
Do not pass  No pases/paséis No pase/pasen
Take  Toma/Tomad  Tome/Tomen
Do not take  No tomes/toméis No tome/tomen
Turn  Dobla/Doblad  Doble/Doblen
Do not turn  No dobles/dobléis No doble/doblen
Walk  Camina/Caminad  Camine/Caminen
Do not walk  No camines/caminéis No camine/caminen

To give proper directions, you will need the names of the means of transportation. When explaining the means of transportation a person will take, use a definite article (el, la, los, las) and say: Toma el autobús. (Take the bus.) When saying that someone travels by a certain means of transportation, be careful to use to the correct preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRANSPORTATION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>en avión (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>en bicicleta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>en autobús (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>en coche (m.), en carro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on foot</td>
<td>a pie (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
<td>en metro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi</td>
<td>en taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>en tren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Also use a + definite article (al, a la, a los, a las) to express where to get the transportation you need. Study the following:

I am going . . . Voy . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLACE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to the airport</td>
<td>al aeropuerto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the bus stop</td>
<td>a la parada de autobús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the dock</td>
<td>al muelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the gate</td>
<td>a la puerta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the platform</td>
<td>al andén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the station</td>
<td>a la estación</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the taxi stand</td>
<td>a la parada de taxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the terminal</td>
<td>a la terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the track</td>
<td>a la vía</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the numbers given in Chapter 16:00 to obtain or give gate, platform, or track numbers: Tú vas al aeropuerto y tomas el avión a la puerta número seis. (You go to the airport and you take the plane at gate number six.)

To give or receive adequate directions, you also need the prepositions and prepositional idioms showing location and direction:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>at, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arriba</td>
<td>above, on top of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerca</td>
<td>nearby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>in, into, within, on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacia</td>
<td>toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>por</td>
<td>by, through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sobre</td>
<td>over, above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a la derecha</td>
<td>to the right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a la izquierda</td>
<td>to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al centro</td>
<td>downtown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al centro (de)</td>
<td>in the middle (of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
al otro lado (de) on the other side (of)
alrededor de around
debajo de beneath
enfrente de opposite, facing, across from
junto a alongside
por aquí (allá) this way, that way, nearby
todo derecho straight ahead

In English, when we give directions, we often refer to the number of blocks a person has to walk. In Spanish, use the word *una cuadra* (a block): *Vivo a dos cuadras de aquí.* (I live two blocks from here.)

**Commands with Reflexive Verbs**

With reflexive verbs, the subject pronoun is usually dropped but the reflexive pronoun must be used. In negative commands, the reflexive pronoun precedes the verb:

- Don’t get up early! ¡No se levante (Ud.) temprano!
- ¡No se levantan (Uds.) temprano!
- ¡No te levantas (tú) temprano!
- ¡No os levantéis (vosotros) temprano!

In affirmative commands, the reflexive pronoun follows the verb and is attached to it. Note that the final *d* is dropped from the *vosotros* form before adding the reflexive pronoun. An accent mark is placed on the stressed vowel of the *tú*, *Ud.*, and *Uds.* forms. To find the stressed vowel in most instances, simply count back three vowels and add the accent:

- Get up! ¡Levántese (Ud.)!
- ¡Levántense (Uds)!
- ¡Levántate (tú)!
- ¡Levántaos (vosotros)!

**GETTING THERE**

Being able to understand and knowing how to give directions is an important survival skill for those traveling abroad. Should you get lost and find yourself in need of instructions, the following sentences will prove useful. The blanks can be filled in with proper names or a tourist attraction, store, sporting event, etc.
I’m lost. Estoy perdido(a).
Can you tell me how to get to . . . ? ¿Puede decírmelo cómo se va a . . .
Where is (are) . . . ? ¿Dónde está(n) . . .

Being able to follow directions that are given to you will be of utmost importance, whether you are lost or simply looking for a place that you can’t seem to locate:

It’s (Is it) far away.(?) (¿)Está lejos.(?)
It’s (Is it) nearby.(?) (¿)Está cerca.(?)
It’s (Is it) this way.(?) (¿)Está por aquí.(?)
It’s (Is it) that way.(?) (¿)Está por allá.(?)
It’s (Is it) straight ahead.(?) (¿)Es derecho.(?)

Turn right (left) at the light. Doble a la derecha (a la izquierda) en el semáforo.

Stop! ¡Alto!
Follow me. Sígame.
There it (they) is (are). Allá está(n).

It would be better to take (definite article + means of transportation) . . . Sería mejor tomar (el/la + means of transportation) . . .

And if you are far from your destination:

Is it to the north? ¿Está al norte?
Is it to the south? ¿Está al sur?
Is it to the east? ¿Está al este?
Is it to the west? ¿Está al oeste?

USING IDIOMS
In English, we use idioms and idiomatic expressions all the time without even realizing that we are doing so. An example will help you understand exactly how an idiom works. The phrase “She fell head over heels for him” does not mean in a literal sense that she fell head first and tripped over her feet. To someone who doesn’t speak English well, this sentence could
be extremely confusing. But a native speaker immediately understands the underlying meaning of this phrase—that she really liked him a lot.

Idioms occur in every language, are generally indigenous to that specific language, and do not translate well from one language to the next. If a Spanish speaker were to say, “Este coche cuesta un ojo de la cara,” she would mean that the car costs a small fortune, even though the literal translation of the sentence is, “This car costs an eye from your face.”

An idiom, then, is a word or expression whose meaning cannot be easily understood by analyzing or translating every word in the sentence.

Use the idioms in the following table to express your opinions and accentuate the positive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IDIOM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as for me</td>
<td>a pesar de todo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in my opinion</td>
<td>en mi opinión</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course</td>
<td>por supuesto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>de acuerdo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the contrary</td>
<td>al contrario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to tell the truth</td>
<td>a decir verdad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without a doubt</td>
<td>sin duda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**POSITIVE REINFORCEMENT**

If you would like to persuade someone to do something, positive reinforcement might work. Reinforcing your opinions by using the words and expressions presented below should help you convince even the most stubborn among you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s a good idea!</td>
<td>¡Es una buena idea!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s great!</td>
<td>¡Es excelente!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s important!</td>
<td>¡Es importante!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s interesting!</td>
<td>¡Es interesante!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s magnificent!</td>
<td>¡Es magnífico(a)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s sensational!</td>
<td>¡Es sensacional!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s super!</td>
<td>¡Es estupendo(a)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s superb!</td>
<td>¡Es fenomenal!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Combine expressions from the previous two tables to be persuasive:

- A decir verdad, es fenomenal! To tell the truth, it’s superb!
- A pesar de todo, es magnifico. All the same, it’s magnificent.
COMPLAINTS
If you have persuaded someone to go along with you and they are not satisfied, you can expect to hear one of the following phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPLAINT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s annoying!</td>
<td>¡Es fastidioso(a)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s boring!</td>
<td>¡Es aburrido(a)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s disgusting!</td>
<td>¡Es asqueroso(a)!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s frightful!</td>
<td>¡Es terrible!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s horrible!</td>
<td>¡Es horrible!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s ridiculous!</td>
<td>¡Es ridículo(a)!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TIME’S UP!

Without looking back, do the following:

1. Use ¿Por qué no . . . to suggest going to a restaurant.
2. Propose going to the movies by using tener ganas de.
3. Ask a friend if he/she wants to go shopping.
4. Suggest to a friend: “Let’s go to the Prado museum.”
5. Using an affirmative command, tell someone to continue walking three blocks.
6. Using a negative command, tell someone not to go straight ahead.
7. Tell a friend to wake up early.
8. Give a positive reason for going to visit El Morro castle in Puerto Rico.
9. Say that in your opinion, it’s great.
10. Give a negative reaction toward going to the theater.
Asking Questions

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Asking yes/no questions
• Asking for information
• Getting around
• Questioning new acquaintances

In this lesson you'll learn how to ask questions in a variety of different ways. No matter what the situation, no matter what your needs, you'll be able to get the information you seek.
ASKING YES/NO QUESTIONS
The easiest questions, by far, are those that demand a simple yes or no answer. There are four ways to obtain this information. You can use:

- Intonation
- The tag ¿No es verdad? (Isn’t that so?)
- The tag ¿Está bien?
- Inversion

Using Intonation
Questions are often asked by changing your intonation and raising your voice at the end of a statement. In conversation, just put an imaginary question mark at the end of your thought and speak with a rising inflection. When writing a question, make sure to put an inverted question mark (¿) at the beginning of the sentence and a regular one at the end of the sentence:

¿Tienes ganas de ir al cine? (Do you feel like going to the movies?)

When you speak with a rising inflection, your voice starts out lower and gradually keeps rising until the end of the sentence. In a sentence that states a fact, your voice rises and then lowers by the end of the sentence.

To form a negative question, simply put no before the conjugated verb in simple and compound tenses and whenever there are two verbs:

¿No tienes ganas de ir al cine? Don’t you feel like going to the movies?
¿No has escrito la carta? Didn’t you write the letter?

Using ¿No Es Verdad? and ¿Está Bien?
¿No es verdad? and ¿Está bien? are tags that can have a variety of meanings: isn’t that so?; right?; isn’t (doesn’t) he/she?; aren’t (don’t) they?; aren’t (don’t) we?; aren’t (don’t) you?; and so on. ¿No es verdad? and ¿Está bien? may be placed at the end of a statement, especially when the expected answer is yes:

Tienes ganas de ir al cine. You feel like going to the movies,
¿No es verdad? don’t you?
Vamos al cine. ¿Está bien? We’re going to the movies. OK?

Using Inversion
Inversion refers to reversing the word order of the subject noun or pronoun and verb form. Remember to raise your voice at the end of the phrase to show that you are asking a question:

Ud. va al cine. ¿Va Ud. al cine?
Juan es de España. ¿Es Juan de España?
Ud. se levanta tarde. ¿Se levanta Ud. tarde?

When there are two verbs or a compound tense, put the subject noun or pronoun after the phrase containing the second verb:

Ella quiere salir. ¿Quiere salir ella?
María quería trabajar allí. ¿Quería trabajar allí María?
Ana está estudiando arte. ¿Está estudiando arte Ana?
Él ha escrito esta carta. ¿Ha escrito esta carta él?

To make a question with inversion negative, put no before the inverted verb and pronoun. For reflexive verbs, remember to keep the reflexive pronouns before the conjugated verb, from which it may not be separated.

¿No es español el niño? Isn’t the boy Spanish?
¿No querías salir? Didn’t you want to go out?
¿No se levantó temprano Marta? Didn’t Martha wake up early?
¿No han lavado el coche ellas? Didn’t they wash the car?

INFORMATION QUESTIONS
No matter what your reason for studying Spanish, many occasions will arise when a simple yes/no response is inadequate. For this reason, it is important to know how to ask for information. Interrogative adjectives, adverbs, and pronouns will allow you to accomplish this task.

Interrogative Adjectives
The interrogative adjectives qué (which, what), cuánto(-a) (how much), and cuántos(-as) (how many) are used before nouns. Cuánto must agree in number and gender with the noun it modifies as shown here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>¿cuánto?</td>
<td>¿cuánta?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>¿cuántos?</td>
<td>¿cuántas?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An interrogative adjective may be placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the verb, but it must always precede its noun and any modifiers of that noun. In spoken Spanish you may hear the second form, shown below, but only for emphasis.
¿Qué revista lees? What magazine are you reading?
¿Lees qué revista?
¿Cuánto tiempo necesitas? How much time do you need?
¿Necesitas cuánto tiempo?
¿Cuánta comida van a comer? How much food are they going to eat?
¿Van a comer cuánta comida?
¿Cuántos miembros hay? How many members are there?
¿Hay cuántos miembros?
¿Cuántas personas vienen? How many people are coming?
¿Vienen cuántas personas?

Interrogative adjectives may be preceded by a preposition:
¿A qué hora llegó? At what time did he arrive?
¿De cuántas personas hablaba? About how many people was he speaking to?
¿Con cuánto dinero vas a viajar? How much money will you travel with?

Interrogative Adverbs
Adverbs asking for information help you find out what you need to know. Use the interrogative adverbs listed in the table below with inversion to form questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADVERB</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>how?</td>
<td>¿cómo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when?</td>
<td>¿cuándo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where (to)?</td>
<td>¿dónde?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why? (for what reason)</td>
<td>¿por qué?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why? (for what purpose)</td>
<td>¿para qué?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interrogative adverbs are followed by inversion:
¿Cómo se llama (Ud.)? What's your name?
¿Por qué está (él) atrasado? Why is he late?
Some interrogative adverbs can also be preceded by prepositions:

¿Para cuándo necesita (Ud.) los papeles?
When do you need the papers by?

¿De dónde son (ellas)?
Where are they from?

¿Para Qué? and ¿Por Qué? ¿Para qué? asks about a purpose:

¿Para qué usas este libro?
Why (For what purpose) do you use this book?

—Uso este libro para aprender el español.
—I use this book to learn Spanish.

¿Por qué? asks about a reason:

¿Por qué vas a la biblioteca?
Why (For what reason) do you go to the library?

—Voy a la biblioteca porque necesito un libro.
—I go to the library because I need a book.

Interrogative Pronouns

If you were in a store trying to make a decision about which of two or more items to choose, you might want to ask the salesperson which one would be the right choice, or what the price is. The interrogative pronouns listed below will help you ask your questions properly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRONOUN</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>¿quién(es)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What?</td>
<td>¿qué?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What? Which one(s)</td>
<td>¿cuál(es)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much?</td>
<td>¿cuánto?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many?</td>
<td>¿cuántos(as)?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative pronouns ¿quién(es)? and ¿cuál(es)? agree in number with the nouns they replace, while ¿cuánto? agrees in both number and gender with the noun being replaced:
¿Quién trabaja? Who is working?
(The answer requires the name of one person.)

¿Quiénes trabajan? Who is working?
(The answer requires at least two names.)

¿Cuál de estas películas prefieres? Which (one) of these films do you prefer?
(The answer requires the name of one film.)

¿Cuáles de estas películas prefieres? Which (ones) of these films do you prefer?
(The answer requires at least two names.)

¿Cuánto cuesta esta camisa? How much does this shirt cost?
¿Cuántos están aquí? How many are here?
¿Cuántas son? How many (females) are there?

A preposition + quién refers to people. A preposition + que refers to things.

¿De quién hablas? ¿De qué hablas? Whom are you speaking about? What are you speaking about?

¿A quién se refiere? ¿A qué se refiere? To whom are you referring? What are you referring to?

¿Adónde vas? ¿De dónde eres? Where are you going? Where are you from?

¿Qué? and ¿Cuál? ¿Qué? usually means “what” and asks about a definition, description, or an explanation. When it comes before a noun, however, ¿qué? means “which.”

¿Qué es esto? What is this?
¿Qué está pensando? What are you thinking?
¿Qué programa estás mirando? Which program are you watching?
¿Cuál? means “what” or “which (one, ones)” and asks about a choice or a selection:

- ¿Cuál es su nombre? What is your name?
- ¿Cuál de los tres quiere Ud.? Which (one) of the three do you want?
- ¿Cuáles son los días de la semana? What are the days of the week?

**HAY**

The verb *haber* is used impersonally to ask and answer questions. The expression *hay* can mean “there is (are)” as a statement or “is (are) there” as a question. Note the following about the uses of *hay*:

- As a question, *hay* can be used by itself using intonation: ¿*Hay un restaurante por aquí?* (Is there a restaurant nearby?)
- It can be used with a preceding question word: ¿*Dónde hay un restaurante por aquí?* (Where is a nearby restaurant?)
- *Hay* can also be used to ask a negative question: ¿*No hay un restaurante por aquí?* (Isn’t there a restaurant nearby?)
- You can use *hay* in a non-interrogative sentence to answer a question: *Hay un restaurante por aquí.* (There is a restaurant nearby.)

**Expressions with Hay**

*Hay* is generally used to refer to certain weather or physical conditions:

- There’s moonlight. Hay luna.
- It’s foggy. Hay neblina.
- It’s sunny. Hay sol.

*Hay que* + infinitive means to be necessary to: *Hay que beber agua para vivir.* (One must drink water to live.)

**ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS**

You can ask for directions by using the following phrases:

- Where is . . . ? ¿Dónde está . . . ?
- Where are . . . ? ¿Dónde están . . . ?
- Can you tell me how to get to . . . ? ¿Puede Ud. decirme cómo se va a . . . ?
Where is the Prado?  ¿Dónde está el Prado?
¿Puede Ud. decirme cómo se va al Prado?
El Prado, por favor.

Where are the bathrooms?  ¿Dónde están los baños/los servicios?
¿Puede Ud. decirme cómo se va a los baños/los servicios?
Los baños/los servicios, por favor.

ASKING FOR A PRICE
Being able to ask for prices in a foreign country is always a valuable tool. Use the following phrases when you need to know how much something costs:

¿Cuánto cuesta (un/una) . . . ?  What’s the price of (a) . . . ?
¿Cuánto cuesta este (esta)/ese (esa) . . . ?  How much does this/that . . . cost?
¿Cuánto cuestan estos (estas)/esos (esas) . . . ?  How much do these/those . . . cost?
¿Cuánto cuesta un periódico?  How much does a newspaper cost?
¿Cuánto cuesta(n) este (estos) periódico(s)?  How much does this (do these) newspaper(s) cost?
¿Cuánto cuesta(n) esta (estas) revista(s)?  How much does this (do these) magazine(s) cost?

When asking for a price, make sure that all the singular and plural, masculine and feminine elements of the sentence agree:

¿Cuánto cuestan estas cartas?  How much do these cards cost?
¿Cuánto cuesta el pantalón blanco?  How much do the white pants cost?

QUESTIONING NEW ACQUAINTANCES
When you meet someone for the first time, there are many questions you would like to ask to get to know that person better. Here are some of the most common questions that could be used to get information by using the polite or familiar verb forms:
What’s your name? ¿Cómo se llama (Ud.)?
¿Cómo te llamas?
What is your wife’s (child’s) name? ¿Cómo se llama su (tu) esposa (niño, niña)?
Where are you from? ¿De dónde es (eres)?
What is your nationality? ¿Cuál es su (tu) nacionalidad?
What is your profession? ¿Cuál es su (tu) profesión?
How old are you? ¿Cuántos años tiene(s)?
How many people are in your family? ¿Cuántas personas hay en su (tu) familia?
Where are you staying? ¿Dónde se (te) aloja(s)?
Where do you live? ¿Dónde vive(s)?
What is your address? ¿Cuál es su (tu) dirección?
What is your phone number? ¿Cuál es su (tu) número de teléfono?

LACK OF COMMUNICATION
When you’ve asked a question and don’t understand the answer or need more information, use the following expressions to help you get the information you need.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me.</td>
<td>Perdón.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me.</td>
<td>Perdóneme. (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me.</td>
<td>Perdóname. (familiar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me.</td>
<td>Con permiso.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t understand.</td>
<td>No comprendo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t understand.</td>
<td>No entiendo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I didn’t hear you.</td>
<td>No le (te) oí.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I didn’t understand you.</td>
<td>No le (te) entendí.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What?</td>
<td>¿Cómo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please repeat it.</td>
<td>Repita, por favor. (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please repeat it.</td>
<td>Repite, por favor. (familiar)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Speak more slowly. Hable más despacio. (polite)
Speak more slowly. Habla más despacio. (familiar)
What did you say? ¿Qué dijiste (dijiste)?
One more time. Otra vez.
I’m sorry. Lo siento.

NOTE

You can use perdón and perdóneme if you have disturbed or bumped into someone, whereas you should use con permiso when leaving, asking permission to pass through a group or crowd, or when walking in front of a person.

TIME’S UP!

Without looking back in the chapter, try to complete the following:

1. Ask a person for his/her name.
2. Ask a person for his/her address.
3. Ask a person for his/her phone number.
4. Ask where a person is from.
5. Ask a person’s age.
6. Ask if there is a restaurant nearby.
7. Ask which one of the films he/she prefers.
8. Ask a person his/her profession.
10. Say that you are sorry and that you don’t understand.
Answering Questions

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Answering yes and no questions
• Using negative expressions
• Answering questions with ¿qué? and ¿cuál?
• Answering questions with interrogative adverbs
• Talking on the phone
• Facing phone problems

In this lesson you'll learn how to correctly answer the questions people ask you by giving affirmative or negative responses or by providing necessary information. You'll also learn how to conduct a phone conversation.
ANSWERING YES

Use sí to answer a question affirmatively:

¿Quieres ir al cine?  Do you want to go to the movies?
—Sí, es una buena idea. —Yes, that’s a good idea.

Esta película es fantástica.  This film is great.
— Creo que sí. —I think so.

ANSWERING NO

In Chapter 17:00 you learned how to use no to respond negatively. Other common negatives are listed below. Negative answers may begin with no.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>neither . . . nor</td>
<td>ni . . . ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither, not either</td>
<td>tampoco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never, (not) ever</td>
<td>jamás, nunca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no one, nobody</td>
<td>nadie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no, none, (not) any</td>
<td>ninguno(-a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no, not</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>nada</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To answer negatively, do the following:

- In simple and compound tenses, always put no before the conjugated verb. No may be repeated for emphasis:

  ¿Bailas bien?  No bailo bien.  No, no bailo bien.
  Do you dance well?  I don’t dance well.  No, I don’t dance well.

  ¿Quiere comer?  No quiero comer.  No, no quiero comer.
  Do you want to eat?  I don’t want to eat.  No, I don’t want to eat.

  ¿Ha terminado?  No ha terminado.  No, no ha terminado.
  Did he finish?  He didn’t finish.  No, he didn’t finish.

- Direct and indirect object pronouns, discussed in greater detail in Chapter 10:00, also remain before the conjugated verb when a negative construction is used:
¿Vio el hombre? No lo vi. No, no lo vi.
Did you see the man? I didn’t see him. No, I didn’t see him.

• Spanish sentences may have more than one negative. When no is one of the negatives, it precedes the conjugated verb. If no is omitted, another negative precedes the verb:

  No canto nunca. Nunca canto. I never sing.
  No habla nadie. Nadie habla. No one is speaking.
  No le creo a nadie nunca. Nunca le creo a nadie. I never believe anyone.
  No lo vi tampoco. Tampoco lo vi. I didn’t see it either.
  No prefiero ni rojo ni verde. Ni rojo ni verde prefiero. I don’t prefer either red or green.

• Each part of the ni ... ni construction precedes the word or words stressed:

  No como ni frutas ni legumbres. I eat neither fruits nor vegetables.
  La comida no estaba ni buena ni mala. The meal was neither good nor bad.
  No le gusta ni bailar ni cantar. He doesn’t like to dance or to sing.

• An infinitive may be negated as follows: Es mejor no decir nada. (It’s better not to say anything.)

• The negatives nadie, nada, nunca, and jamás are used after comparisons and in phrases beginning with sin (without) or antes (de or que) (before):

  Juega mejor que nadie. He plays better than anyone.
  Lo comprendo más que nunca. I understand it better than ever.
  Lo aprecio más que nada. She treasures it more than anything.
  Llegó sin traer nada. He arrived without bringing anything.
  Hablé antes que nadie. I spoke before anyone else.
  Antes de hacer nada, ella tiene que hacer su tarea. Before doing anything, she has to do her homework.
Negatives may be used alone (without no):

¿Qué estás haciendo?  
—Nada.

¿Ha estado en España?  
—Jamás.

Negatives may be used with two verbs by placing no before the conjugated verb and another negative word after the second verb:

No quiero hacer nada.  
I don't want to do anything.

No he visto a nadie.  
I didn’t see anyone.

Ninguno (not any) drops the final -o and adds an accent to the u = ningún before a masculine singular noun. The feminine singular form is ninguna. There are no plural forms. When used as an adjective, ninguno may be replaced by alguno (a more emphatic negative), which follows the noun:

No tengo ninguno.  
I don’t have any.

No tengo ningún problema.  
I have no problem.

No tengo problema alguno.  
I don’t have a problem.

A negative expression that begins with a preposition retains that preposition when placed before the verb: En nada pienso. (I’m not thinking about anything.)

The words in the first column below, when used in questions, produce the corresponding negative response listed in the second column:

| alguien (someone) | nadie (no one) |
| siemepre (sometimes) | jamás/nunca (never) |
| algo (something) | nada (nothing) |
| también (also) | tampoco (neither) |
| alguno(a) (some, any) | ninguno(a) (none, not any) |

¿Buscas algo?  
No busco nada.

Are you looking for something?  
I’m not looking for anything.
NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS
The following common negative expressions will prove useful in any number of everyday situations:

- **No importa.** (It doesn’t matter.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{Él estará atrasado.} & \text{He’s going to be late.} \\
  &\text{—No importa.} & \text{—It doesn’t matter.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **De nada.** (You’re welcome.) or **No hay de qué.** (You’re welcome.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{Muchas gracias por todo.} & \text{Thank you for everything.} \\
  &\text{—De nada. (No hay de qué.)} & \text{—You’re welcome.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **¡De ninguna manera!** (Certainly not! Not at all!):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{¿Te molesta?} & \text{Does that bother you?} \\
  &\text{—¡De ninguna manera!} & \text{—Not at all!}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **Todavía no.** (Not yet.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{Quieres salir?} & \text{Do you want to leave?} \\
  &\text{—Todavía no.} & \text{—Not yet.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **Ahora no.** (Not now.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{¿Quiere comer?} & \text{Do you want to eat?} \\
  &\text{—Ahora no.} & \text{—Not now.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **Ya no.** (No longer.): **Ya no estudio el español.** (I’m no longer studying Spanish.)

- **Ni yo tampoco.** (Neither do I.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{Ella no quiere bailar.} & \text{She doesn’t want to dance.} \\
  &\text{—Ni yo tampoco.} & \text{—Neither do I.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **No hay remedio.** (It can’t be helped.):
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  &\text{Tienes que esperar.} & \text{You have to wait.} \\
  &\text{—No hay remedio.} & \text{—It can’t be helped.}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- **No obstante** (Nevertheless/However/In spite of): **Está nevando. No obstante él va a trabajar.** (It’s snowing. Nevertheless he’s going to work.)
No cabe duda. (There’s no doubt.): No cabe duda que ella va a tener éxito. (There’s no doubt that she’s going to succeed.)

PERO VERSUS SINO

*Pero* and *sino* both express “but.” *Pero* is used in a more general sense and may also mean “however”:

- No puedo telefonearle ahora, pero voy a telefonearle más tarde.  
  I can’t call him now, but I’ll call him later.

- No tiene mucho dinero, pero está contento.  
  He doesn’t have much money, but (however) he is happy.

*Sino* is only used after a negative statement to express a contrast (on the contrary):

- No canta música popular sino romántica.  
  He doesn’t sing popular music, but he sings romantic music.

- No compra el grande sino el pequeño.  
  He doesn’t buy the big one but (rather) the little one.

ANSWERING INFORMATION QUESTIONS

*Answering Questions with ¿Qué? and ¿Cuál?*

Answering questions with the interrogative adjective *¿qué?* and with the interrogative pronoun *¿cuál(es)?* requires that you keep in mind the number and gender of the nouns to which they refer. Simply use a definite article + an appropriate adjective that agrees in number and gender with the noun referred to and you have a quick, easy answer.

To express “the . . . one(s)” you must use an adjective as a noun. The adjective must agree in number and gender with the noun it is describing. This is usually done with adjectives showing color (*el blanco*—the white one), size (*las grandes*—the big ones), and nationality (*la española*—the Spanish one).

- ¿Cuáles camisas prefieres?  What (ones of the) shirts do you prefer?
- ¿Qué camisas prefieres?  Which shirts do you prefer?
Las azules. The blue ones.
Las pequeñas. The small ones.
Las españolas. The Spanish ones.
¿Cuál de los carros quiere? Which one of the cars do you want?
¿Qué carro quiere? What car do you want?
El blanco. The white one.
El grande. The big one.
El español. The Spanish one.

Some answers to the most commonly asked questions should be at your fingertips:

¿Cómo se (te) llama(s)? What's your name?
—Me llamo . . . —My name is . . .

¿Cuál es su (tu) dirección? What's your address?
—Mi dirección es . . . —My address is . . .

¿Cuál es su (tu) profesión? What's your profession?
—Soy . . . —I am . . .

¿Cuál es su (tu) número de teléfono? What's your phone number?
—Mi número de teléfono es . . . —My phone number is . . .

¿Cuántos años tiene(s)? How old are you?
—Tengo . . . años. —I am . . . years old.

Remember that when a or de (or any of their forms) is in the question, a or de (or any of their forms) must appear in the answer:

¿De qué libro hablas? Which book are you talking about?
—De Don Quijote. —Don Quijote.
¿A quiénes de sus amigas le ha escrito?
—A María y a Juanita.

—to which of your friends have you written?
—to Maria and Juanita.

**Answering Questions with Interrogative Adverbs**

Use the following guidelines to answer questions containing interrogative adverbs:

- **¿Cómo?** (how) may be answered with a preposition (*por*, *en*, or *a*) followed by a noun or an explanation:

  - ¿Cómo vas a Madrid? How are you going to Spain?
    —En tren. —By train.
  - ¿Cómo te llamas? What’s your name?
    —Me llamo . . . —My name is . . .
  - ¿Cómo estás? How are you?
    —Muy bien. —Very good.

- **¿Cuánto(a)(s)?** (How much, many) must be answered with a number or a quantity:

  - ¿Cuánto cuesta este CD? How much does this CD cost?
    —Cien pesos. —A hundred pesos.
  - ¿Cuánta carne quieres? How much meat do you want?
    —Quinientos gramos. —Five hundred grams.

- A question with **¿Cuándo?** (when) is answered by giving a time or an expression of time (see Chapter 16:00):

  - When do you want to leave? ¿Cuándo quieres salir?
    —In fifteen minutes. En quince minutos.
    —At eight o’clock. A las ocho.
    —Immediately. Inmediatamente.

- Answer a question with **¿dónde?** by naming a place, using the preposition *en*:
¿Dónde vives? Where do you live?
—Vivo en . . . —I live in . . .

• Answer a question with ¿adónde? by using the preposition a (al, a los, a las):
  ¿Adónde vas? Where are you going?
  —Voy al banco. —I’m going to the bank.

• Answer ¿de dónde? by using the preposition de (del, de la, de los) + place:
  ¿De dónde eres? Where are you from?
  —Soy de . . . —I’m from . . .

• Answer a question that asks ¿por qué? (why) with porque (because) and a reason:
  ¿Por qué está atrasado? Why are you late?
  —Porque perdí mi tren. —Because I missed my train.

• Answer a question with ¿quién? (who, whom), whether it is used as a subject, direct object, or after a preposition, by naming a person:
  ¿Quién habla? Who is speaking?
  —Juan. —John.
  ¿A quién busca? Whom are you looking for?
  —A un vendedor. —A salesperson.
  ¿Con quién quiere hablar? Whom do you want to speak with?
  —Con la Señora López. —With Mrs. Lopez.

• Answer ¿qué? with the name of a thing:
  ¿Qué se cayó? What fell?
  —Mis gafas. —My glasses.
  ¿Qué busca Ud.? What are you looking for?
  —Una pluma. —A pen.
¿Con qué escribe Ud.? What are you writing with?
—Con un lápiz. —With a pencil.

When a preposition is used in a question, the same preposition must also be used in the answer:

¿Para quién trabajó? For whom did he work?
—Para su padre. —For his father.

ON THE PHONE

Having a phone conversation with a person speaking another language is difficult at best. Without the help of body language, communication can be a chore. Use the phrases presented below to provide and obtain information on the phone.

**Calling**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A ver. (Colombia)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hola. (Argentina)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bueno. (Mexico)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diga. (Spain)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oigo. (Cuba)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aló.</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Está . . . ?</td>
<td>Is . . . in (there)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Es . . .</td>
<td>It’s . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Está en casa . . ?</td>
<td>Is . . . in (there)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habla . . .</td>
<td>This is . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quisiera hablar con . . .</td>
<td>I would like to speak to . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cuándo regresa?</td>
<td>When will he (she) be back?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Llamo más tarde.</td>
<td>I’ll call back later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No importa.</td>
<td>It’s (not) important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tengo que colgar.</td>
<td>I have to hang up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Answering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A ver. (Colombia)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hola. (Argentina)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bueno. (Mexico)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diga. (Spain)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oigo. (Cuba)</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aló.</td>
<td>hello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Quién habla?</td>
<td>Who’s calling?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No cuelgue.</td>
<td>Hold on./Don’t hang up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Un momento.</td>
<td>Just a moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No está.</td>
<td>He/She is not in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Desea Ud. dejar algún recado?</td>
<td>Do you want to leave a message?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lo siento. No puedo entenderle.</td>
<td>I’m sorry, I can’t understand you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Un poco más alto, por favor.</td>
<td>A little louder, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siga . . . Escucho.</td>
<td>Go on . . . I’m listening.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phone Problems

If you’ve made a mistake or if you’re having trouble getting connected, or if there’s trouble on the line, here are the phrases you will need to explain the problem:

- It’s a mistake.  
  - Es un error.
- I have the wrong number.  
  - Tengo el número equivocado.
- There’s no answer.  
  - No contesta.
- We got cut off (disconnected).  
  - Se nos cortó la línea.
- The line is busy.  
  - La línea está ocupada.
- Please redial the number.  
  - Marque (Ud.) de nuevo el número, por favor.
- The telephone is out of order.  
  - El teléfono está fuera de servicio (dañado, descompuesto).
There’s no dial tone. No hay tono (señal).
There’s a lot of static on the line. Hay mucha estática.
We have a bad connection. Tenemos una comunicación mala.
I’m sorry to have bothered you. Disculpe la molestia.

If you want to speak to an operator, say: *El (la) operador(a), por favor.*

---

TIME’S UP!

Without looking in the lesson, see if you can answer these questions:

1. ¿No quiere ir al cine esta noche? (say yes)
2. ¿Tiene ganas de comer en un restaurante? (say no)
3. ¿Ud. fuma? (say no)
4. ¿Cómo se llama Ud.?
5. ¿Dónde vive Ud.?
6. ¿Cuál es su número de teléfono?
7. ¿Cuántos años tiene Ud.?
8. ¿Cuánto cuesta un viaje a España?
9. ¿Cuáles películas populares prefiere Ud?
10. ¿Qué hay en su escritorio (desk)?
Seeking Help

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Getting help anywhere
- At the post office
- At the hair salon
- At the dry cleaner’s
- At the optician’s
- At the camera store
- At the jeweler’s
- Getting special services for special needs

In this lesson you’ll learn how to get all the personal services you might need while traveling in a Spanish-speaking country.
GETTING HELP ANYWHERE
Whether you are seeking certain services or are trying to have something repaired, use the phrases below at the post office, the hair salon, the dry cleaner, the shoemaker, the optometrist, the jeweler, or the camera store:

Can you help me, please? ¿Puede Ud. ayudarme, por favor?
I need . . . Necesito . . .
I’m looking for . . . Busco . . .
Where is the nearest . . . ? ¿Dónde está la . . . más cercana?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLACE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>post office</td>
<td>oficina de correos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair salon</td>
<td>peluquería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry cleaner’s</td>
<td>tintorería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optician’s</td>
<td>óptica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeweler’s</td>
<td>joyería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera store</td>
<td>tienda de fotografía</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you have . . . ? ¿Tiene Ud. . . . ?
Do you sell . . . ? ¿Vende Ud. . . . ?
What time do you open? ¿A qué hora abre Ud.?
What time do you close? ¿A qué hora cierra Ud.?
What days are you open (closed)? ¿Qué días abre (cierra) Ud.?
Can you fix . . . for me? ¿Puede Ud. arreglaréme . . . ?
Can you fix it (them) today? ¿Puede Ud. arreglárémelo/la (los/las) hoy?
May I have a receipt? ¿Puede darme un recibo?
Can you fix it (them) temporarily (while I wait)? ¿Puede Ud. arreglárémelo/la (los/las) temporalmente (mientras espero)?
How much does it cost? ¿Cuánto cuesta?

AT THE POST OFFICE
If you travel to a foreign country, you will quite likely have to make a stop or two at a post office to purchase stamps or to send packages. Use the following table for the postal phrases you will need.
**TERM** | **SPANISH**
---|---
address | la dirección
envelope | el sobre
letter | la carta
to mail (send) | mandar por correo
mailbox | el buzón
package | el paquete
postage | el franqueo
postal worker | el cartero
rate | la tarifa de franqueo
stamp | el sello

Special forms, paperwork, and postal rates apply to different types of letters and packages. If you need to send something C.O.D., you will be sending it contra reembolso. Use the phrases below to get the type of service you require: ¿Cuál es la tarifa de franqueo de . . . a los Estados Unidos? (What is the postal rate of . . . to the United States?)

- an airmail letter | una carta por correo aéreo
- a registered letter | una carta certificada
- a special delivery letter | una carta urgente

Use the preposition por (as opposed to para) to explain how you would like to send a letter or package: Quisiera mandar esta carta por correo . . . (I would like to send this letter by . . . mail.)

- regular | regular
- air | aéreo
- special delivery | urgente

How much do these stamps cost? ¿Cuánto cuestan estos sellos?

**AT THE HAIR SALON**

Men and women alike have to look for a sign that says peluquero(a) for a hairdresser. Un salón de belleza indicates a beauty parlor. To express what you need, say: Quisiera . . . por favor. (I would like . . . please.) followed by these words:
To say how you would like your hair, use the phrase *Quisiera tener el cabello...* (I would like to have my hair...) with the words listed here:

- long: largo
- medium: mediano
- short: corto
- wavy: ondulado
- curly: rizado
- straight: lacio (liso)
- auburn: rojizo
- black: negro
- blond: rubio
- brunette: castaño

If you would like to be a redhead, you would say: *Quisiera ser pelirrojo(a).*

**AT THE DRY CLEANER’S**

Should you have a problem with your clothing, explain what services you need: ¿Puede Ud. ... (este/esta/estos/estas) ... por favor? (Can you ... [this, these ... ] please?)

- dry clean: lavar en seco
- mend: remendarme
- press: plancharme

Make sure to tell the dry cleaner if there’s a problem: *Hay...* (There is [are] ...)

- a hole: un hoyo
- a button missing: un botón que falta
- a loose button: un botón flojo
- a spot, stain: una mancha
- a tear: un desgarrón

**REPAIRS AND MORE REPAIRS**

Use the verb *remendar* when referring to clothing or shoe repairs: ¿Por favor, puede Ud. remendarme esta camisa (estos zapatos)? (Can you please repair this shirt [these shoes] for me?)
Use the verb *reparar* when referring to equipment: ¿*Por favor, puede Ud. repararme este reloj?* (Can you please repair this watch for me?)

**AT THE OPTICIAN’S**

For those who depend upon glasses or contact lenses, a ripped lens or a broken pair of glasses can ruin a vacation if proper measures aren’t taken immediately. Optical centers are available in all countries, but it helps to know the proper vocabulary words, terms, questions, and expressions so that you can have your problem solved as quickly as possible. One day the following phrases may come in handy:

- I have a problem with my . . . Tengo un problema con mis . . .
  - glasses lentes/gafas
  - contact lenses lentes de contacto
  - bifocals gafas bifocales
  - progressive lenses mis lentes progresivos

- The lens (frame) is broken. El lente (el armazón) está roto.
- My lens (contact) is torn. Mi lente de contacto está rasgado.
- Can you replace it? ¿Puede Ud. darme otra?

**AT THE CAMERA SHOP**

The words and expressions listed below will be useful should you have to make a trip to a camera store.

- camera una cámara
- video camera una videocámara
- roll of film una película, un rollo
- 36 exposures de treinta y seis exposiciones
- black and white en blanco y negro
- color a color

**Being Impulsive**

Perhaps you just can’t wait to get home to see if your pictures turned out all right. Or maybe you met someone on your trip and want to give that person a copy of a picture to be treasured forever as a souvenir of this wonderful vacation. Off you go to the nearest camera or drug store, roll
of film in hand. If you want to have your film developed, say: *Quisiera que me revele este carrete (rollo) (inmediatamente).* (I would like to have this film developed [immediately].)

**AT THE JEWELER’S**

It’s always best to leave your expensive jewelry home, but if you take something along and need a repair, or if you simply want to treat yourself to something new, use the words in the table below to refer to the specific items you are wearing, that you want repaired, or that you want to buy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JEWEL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bracelet</td>
<td>la pulsera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earrings</td>
<td>los aretes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necklace</td>
<td>el collar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>el anillo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engagement ring</td>
<td>el anillo de compromiso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>el reloj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To find out the price you would ask:

- ¿Cuánto cuesta?  How much is it?
- ¿Cuánto vale?  How much is it worth?

Sometimes an item of jewelry needs further description by naming the stones it contains. The names of different jewels that might interest you are listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JEWEL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>JEWEL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diamond</td>
<td>un diamante</td>
<td>ruby</td>
<td>un rubí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emerald</td>
<td>una esmeralda</td>
<td>sapphire</td>
<td>un zafiro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pearls</td>
<td>las perlas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are unsure about a stone or want its weight, you would ask:

- ¿Qué es esa piedra?  What is that stone?
- ¿De cuántos quilates es?  How many carats is it?
SPECIAL SERVICES AND NEEDS
When there's a problem, people can have special needs, whether it's obtaining help in finding a lost item or dealing with physical challenges. Refer to these sentences when you need help:

Ayúdeme por favor. Please help me.
Necesito un intérprete. I need an interpreter.
¿Dónde está la comisaría de policía? Where is the police station?
¿Dónde está la Embajada Americana? Where is the American Embassy?
He perdido . . . I've lost . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my checkbook</td>
<td>mi chequera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my documents</td>
<td>mis documentos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my money</td>
<td>mi dinero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my passport</td>
<td>mi pasaporte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my traveler's checks</td>
<td>mis cheques de viajero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my wallet</td>
<td>mi cartera/mi billetera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For those who are physically challenged, the words below may prove invaluable, along with the phrase: ¿Dónde puedo conseguir . . .? (Where can I get . . .?)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEED</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cane</td>
<td>un bastón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closed-captioned TV</td>
<td>una sistema de subtitulación</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hearing aid</td>
<td>un aparato para sordos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheelchair</td>
<td>una silla de ruedas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These items can be purchased, rented from, or located by organizations dedicated to the needs of the physically challenged. There are also many pharmacies (*farmacias*) that specialize in the rental of medical appliances—*el alquiler de aparatos médicos*. 
TIME’S UP!

Ask the following without looking back at the lessons:

1. For help in general
2. What time a store opens
3. For a receipt
4. For the price of an airmail stamp
5. For a haircut
6. To have a suit dry-cleaned
7. If you can have your contact lens replaced
8. For a roll of 36-exposure film
9. To have your watch fixed
10. For the nearest police station
Expressing Positive Opinions

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Making suggestions
• Going to the movies and watching television
• Using demonstrative pronouns
• Using direct object nouns and pronouns
• Using indirect object pronouns
• Using *gustar* and other similar verbs
• Positioning object pronouns
• Using the subjunctive to express emotions and feelings

In this lesson you’ll learn how to invite someone to participate in leisure activities using direct and indirect object pronouns. You’ll also see how to express positive opinions, feelings, and emotions with and without the subjunctive.
MAKING SUGGESTIONS
Certain key phrases are readily available to you if you’d like to suggest an outing or an activity to someone. These phrases include indirect object pronouns, which will be explained in greater depth later in this chapter. For the phrases that follow, you only need to pay attention to using the correct indirect object form for you. Note that the singular polite forms are presented and the familiar forms are enclosed in brackets. When you become more familiar with indirect object pronouns, you may substitute the plural forms for you in any of these sentences. In each case, the conjugated verb must be followed by an infinitive. For now, concentrate on committing these phrases to memory, because they are so useful in a wide variety of situations.

Do(n’t) you want to . . . ? ¿(No) le (te) parece . . . ?
Are(n’t) you interested in . . . ? ¿(No) le (te) interesa . . . ?
Would(n’t) it please you to . . . ? ¿(No) le (te) gustaría . . . ?

Do(n’t) you want to go to the country? ¿(No) Le (Te) parece bien ir al campo?
—Yes, I would. —Sí, me parece bien ir al campo.
Are(n’t) you interested in going to the movies? ¿(No) le (te) interesa ir al cine?
—No, I’m not interested. —No, no me interesa.
Would(n’t) it please you to go out? ¿(No) le (te) gustaría salir?
—Yes, it would. —Sí me gustaría salir.

LEISURE ACTIVITIES
Leisure activities play an important role in travel and tourism. The list below gives a variety of popular attractions, events, and pastimes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITY</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ACTIVITY</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ballet</td>
<td>el ballet</td>
<td>hike</td>
<td>la caminata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>la playa</td>
<td>movies</td>
<td>el cine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cards</td>
<td>los naipes</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>la ópera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concert</td>
<td>el concierto</td>
<td>party</td>
<td>la fiesta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhibit</td>
<td>la exposición</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>la televisión</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Spanish language designates certain verbs to accompany certain activities. Use the verb *mirar* to say that you watch *la televisión*. Use *jugar(ue) a* + a definite article to say that you play games. Use *dar* with *una caminata* to describe a hike. And use *ir + a* + a definite article with other places listed.

- Yo miro la televisión.  I watch television.
- Yo juego a los naipes.  I play cards.
- Yo doy una caminata.  I go for a hike.
- Yo voy al ballet.  I go to the ballet.

To invite someone to go on a picnic say: ¿Quiere(s) hacer una gira al campo? (Would you like to go on a picnic?)

**Going to the Movies and Watching Television**
The same types of themes (horror, adventure, mystery, comedy, drama, romance) appear in films and on television. Use the words listed here when you want to see or ask about a movie or program.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROGRAM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventure film</td>
<td>una película de aventura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoon</td>
<td>los dibujos animados</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>una comedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drama</td>
<td>un drama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game show</td>
<td>un programa de concursos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horror movie</td>
<td>una película de horror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love story</td>
<td>una película de amor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>las noticias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police story</td>
<td>una película policiaca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science-fiction</td>
<td>una película de ciencia ficción</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soap opera</td>
<td>una telenovela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spy movie</td>
<td>una película de espía</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk show</td>
<td>un programa de entrevistas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather</td>
<td>el pronóstico del tiempo meteorológico</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What’s on TV? ¿Qué hay en la televisión?
What film is showing? ¿Qué película están pasando?
What program is playing? Qué programa están pasando?
What kind of film is it? ¿Qué tipo de película es esa?

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Demonstrative pronouns (*this* [one], *that* [one], *these*, *those*) replace a noun referring to a person, place, thing, or idea and may be used alone. These pronouns must agree in number and gender with the nouns to which they refer. Demonstrative pronouns are distinguished from demonstrative adjectives by an accent mark.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCLINE</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>éste</td>
<td>ésta</td>
<td>esto</td>
<td>this (one)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éstos</td>
<td>éstas</td>
<td></td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ése</td>
<td>ésa</td>
<td>eso</td>
<td>that (one)  [near]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éses</td>
<td>ésas</td>
<td></td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquél</td>
<td>aquélla</td>
<td>aquello</td>
<td>that (one)  [far]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquéllos</td>
<td>aquéllas</td>
<td></td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following about how to use demonstrative pronouns:

- Demonstrative pronouns can be distinguished from demonstrative adjectives by their accented letter: *este libro* y *ése* (this book and that one).
- Demonstrative pronouns agree in number and gender with the nouns to which they refer:
  
  I prefer this coat and those.  
  Prefiero este abrigo y éses.

  I’ll take this skirt and that one.  
  Me llevo esta falda y aquélla.

- Demonstrative pronouns can be followed by the words *aquí*, *ahí* (which indicates proximity to the the person spoken to), and *allá* (which recognizes distance from the speaker and the person spoken to):
these ones  estos ahí
that one    aquél allá

Which (pair of) pants do you prefer?
¿Cuáles pantalones prefieres?

These or those?
¿Estos aquí o esos allá?

• The neuter forms, _esto_ , _eso_ , and _aquello_ , are invariable because they do not refer to specific nouns but to statements, ideas, and understood nouns. These forms contain no accent as they have no corresponding demonstrative adjectives.

He is late and that makes me angry.
Él está atrasado y eso me enoja.

What is this (that)?
¿Qué es esto (eso, aquello)?

In a question asking about something unknown, such as the preceding question, the neuter form of the pronoun is used until the noun is identified, after which the pronoun must correspond in number and gender with the noun to which it refers.

Phrases using the definite articles _el_ ( _la, los, las_ ) + _de_ , meaning “that of” or “the one of” and _el_ ( _la, los, las_ ) + _que_ , meaning “the one that,” are used as demonstrative pronouns.

El (La, Los, Las) de Marta es (son) importante(s).
The one(s) of Martha are important.

El (La, Los, Las) que está(n) aquí me interesa(n).
The one(s) that is (are) here interest(s) me.

El coche de Juan es distinto del de Julio, pero es muy parecido al que tiene Roberto.
Juan’s car is different from Julio’s, but it is very similar to the one Robert has.

The Former and the Latter
To express “the latter” (the latest, the most recently mentioned), use _éste_ ( _ésta, éstos, éstas_ ) and to express “the former” (the most remotely mentioned), use _aquél_ ( _aquélla, aquellos, aquéllas_ ).

In English, we usually speak about “the former and the latter.” In Spanish, the word order is reversed, and they refer to “the latter and the former,” which is often less confusing:
¿Qué piensas de estas gafas de sol grandes y de éstas pequeñas?

What do you think of these large and small sunglasses?

Pienso que éstas (las pequeñas) son más bonitas que aquéllas (las grandes).

I think that these (the latter—the small ones) are prettier than those (the former—the big ones).

**OBJECT PRONOUNS**

Object pronouns are used so that an object noun doesn’t have to be continuously repeated. This allows for a more free-flowing conversational tone. Object pronouns are classified as either direct or indirect. The following table lists the object pronouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
<th>INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te</td>
<td>you (familiar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lo</td>
<td>him, it, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la</td>
<td>her, it, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nos</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os</td>
<td>you (polite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>los</td>
<td>them, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>las</td>
<td>them, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

1. The forms *me*, *te*, *se*, *nos*, and *os* are direct and indirect object pronouns. They are also reflexive pronouns (see Chapter 18:00).

2. The direct object pronoun *lo* is preferred to *le* to express *him* or *you* in Latin America.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yo invito a Carlos.</th>
<th>I invite Carlos.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yo le invito.</td>
<td>I invite him. (In Spain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yo lo invito.</td>
<td>I invite him. (In Latin America)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Direct Object Pronouns**
Direct objects (which can be nouns or pronouns) answer the question *whom* or *what* the subject is acting upon and may refer to people, places, things, or ideas. A direct object pronoun replaces a direct object noun.

- Tú compras el libro. You buy the book.
- Tú lo compras. You buy it.
- Yo miro las películas. I watch the movies.
- Yo las miro. I watch them.
- Yo te quiero. I love you.
- Tú me quieres. You love me.
- Ud. nos ve. You see us.
- Nosotros le vemos. We see you.

When using object pronouns, make sure that your conjugated verb agrees with the subject and not the object pronoun.

**The Personal A**
The personal *a* has no meaning and merely indicates that the direct object is a person. The personal *a* is only used before a direct object noun (not before a pronoun) when the direct object is:

- A person or persons: *Visito a mis amigos.* (I visit my friends.)
- A pet: *Cuido a su perro.* (I watch her dog.)
- A pronoun referring to an indefinite person: ¿*Ves a alguien?* (Do you see anyone?)

The personal *a* is not used with the verb *tener:* *Tengo muchos amigos.* (I have many friends.)

**Indirect Object Pronouns**
Indirect objects (which can be nouns or pronouns) answer the question *to* or *for whom* the subject is doing something. Indirect objects only refer to people. An indirect object pronoun replaces an indirect object noun but is used in Spanish when the noun is mentioned. A key to the correct usage of an indirect object pronoun is the preposition *a* (*al, a la, a los, or a las*), which means “to” or “for” (unlike the personal *a*, which has no meaning) followed by the name or reference to a person. Use *a él, a ella,* or *a Ud.* to clearly differentiate to whom you are referring.
Ella le escribe a Juan. She writes to John.

Ella le escribe (a él). She writes to him.

Él le habla a la muchacha. He speaks to the girl.

Él le habla (a ella). He speaks to her.

Ud. me compra un regalo. You buy a gift for me.

Yo le compro un regalo. I buy a gift for you.

Some Spanish constructions with direct and indirect object pronouns differ from the English:

- Verbs that take an indirect object in English do not necessarily take an indirect object in Spanish. The following verbs take a direct object in Spanish:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esperar</td>
<td>to wait for</td>
<td>llamar</td>
<td>to call, name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buscar</td>
<td>to look for</td>
<td>pagar</td>
<td>to pay for (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escuchar</td>
<td>to listen to</td>
<td>mirar</td>
<td>to look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esperar</td>
<td>to hope for (to)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Verbs that take a direct object in English do not necessarily take a direct object in Spanish. These verbs take an indirect object in Spanish because to or for is implied or because the verb is followed by a:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contestar</td>
<td>to answer</td>
<td>pagar</td>
<td>to pay ([to] someone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dar</td>
<td>to give</td>
<td>pedir</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decir</td>
<td>to tell</td>
<td>preguntar</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>escribir</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td>regalar</td>
<td>to give a gift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explicar</td>
<td>to explain</td>
<td>telefonear</td>
<td>to call (on the phone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandar</td>
<td>to send</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gustar and Other Similar Verbs.** Although gustar (to please, to like) is perhaps the most common of the verbs using indirect objects, there are many others, which are listed here:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agradar</td>
<td>to please, to be</td>
<td>importar</td>
<td>to matter, care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pleased with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bastard</td>
<td>to be enough</td>
<td>interesar</td>
<td>to interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolor (ue)</td>
<td>to be painful</td>
<td>parecer</td>
<td>to seem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encantar</td>
<td>to adore</td>
<td>quedare</td>
<td>to remain, have left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faltar</td>
<td>to lack, need</td>
<td>tocare</td>
<td>to be one’s turn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs requiring an indirect object follow these rules:

- The Spanish indirect object is the subject of the English sentence, so using these verbs requires that you think backwards a bit:

  Me gustan los libros. I like the books. (The books are pleasing to me.)

  Nos falta una pluma. We need a pen. (A pen is lacking to us.)

- Always use the third person singular form of *gustar* with an action or actions:

  Le gusta bailar y cantar. He likes to dance and sing. (Dancing and singing are pleasing to him.)

- The indirect object pronoun may be preceded by the preposition *a* + the corresponding prepositional pronoun *mí, ti, él, ella, Ud., nosotros, vosotros, ellos,ellas, Uds.* for stress or clarification:

  A mí me parece imposible. It seems impossible to me.

  A ellos les toca jugar. It is their turn to play.

- The indirect object noun generally precedes the indirect object pronoun:

  A Paco no le queda nada. Paco has nothing left.

  A las niñas les gusta ir al centro. The girls like to go downtown.

**The Prepositions to, for, and from**

The prepositions *to*, *for*, and *from* are not expressed in Spanish before indirect object pronouns, and they may or may not be expressed in English. Note that if one of these prepositions could be used, then an indirect pronoun is called for.
Me mostró su batería. He showed his drums to me.
(He showed me his drums.)
Le compré este libro. I bought this book for him.
(I bought him this book.)
Nos cobraron el dinero. They collected the money from us.

**Position of Object Pronouns**
Study the following rules for the placement of pronouns:

- Object pronouns, direct or indirect, including reflexive pronouns, in simple and compound tenses, are placed before the verb:
  
  Yo lo tomo. I take it.
  
  Él no la ha visto. He hasn’t seen her.
  
  Nosotros nos levantamos temprano.

- With an affirmative command, the object pronoun follows the verb and is attached to it. An accent mark is normally required on the stressed vowel (count back three vowels and add the accent):
  
  Affirmative: Cómpralo. Buy it.
  
  But:
  
  Negative: No lo compres. Don’t buy it.

- With an infinitive or a gerund, the object pronoun may precede the conjugated verb, or follow the infinitive or gerund and be attached to it. When attached to the gerund, add the required accent on the stressed vowel:
  
  Lo quiero comprar. I want to buy it.
  
  Quiero comprarlo.
  
  Lo estoy haciendo. I’m doing it.
  
  Estoy haciéndolo.

**Double Object Pronouns**
More than one pronoun may be used in a sentence at a time. In Spanish, unlike in English, the indirect object pronoun (usually a person) precedes the direct object pronoun (usually a thing):
Él me lo describe. He describes it to me.
Ella te la da. She gives it to you.

Note the following:

- The indirect object pronouns le and les change to se before the direct object pronouns lo, la, los, las: Yo se los leo. (I read them to you [him, her].)
- The phrases a Ud./Uds., a él/éllos and a ella/ellas may be used to clarify the meaning of se: Yo se la doy a ella (a Uds.). (I give it to her [you].)
- The same rules for the position of single object pronouns apply for double object pronouns:

  **Infinitive:**
  - Me lo quiere dar. He wants to give it to me.
  - Quiere dármelo.

  **Gerund:**
  - Me lo está dando. He’s giving it to me.
  - Está dándomelo.

  **Affirmative command:**
  - Démelos. Give it to me.

  **Negative command:**
  - No me lo dé. Don’t give it to me.

**USING ACCENTS**

When attaching two pronouns to an infinitive, the general rule of thumb is to count back three vowels and then add an accent: Él va a comprarlo. (He is going to buy it for me.) When the pronouns are placed before the conjugated verb, no accent is added: Él me lo va a comprar. (He is going to buy it for me.)

When the affirmative command has more than one syllable, count back four vowels and then add the accent: Démelos. (Tell it to me.) No accent is added for the negative command: No me lo diga. (Don’t tell it to me.)

When the pronouns are attached to a present participle, count back four vowels and add the accent: Élla está leyéndoselo. (She is reading it to him [her].)

**POSITIVE FEELINGS**

An invitation can be extended using a direct object pronoun: ¿Ud. quiere (Tú quieres) acompañarme (nos) . . . ? (Would you like to accompany me [us]?) To accept, use sí and one of the following phrases:
EXPRESSION | SPANISH
--- | ---
Why not! | ¡Cómo no!
Gladly! | ¡Con mucho gusto!
Great! | ¡Magnífico!
I adore . . . | Me encanta(n) . . .
I like . . . | Me gusta(n) . . .
Of course. | Claro.
Of course. | Por supuesto.
OK. | De acuerdo.
That would please me. | Me gustaría.
What a good idea. | ¡Qué buena idea!
Why not? | ¿Por qué no?
With pleasure. | Con placer.

USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE TO EXPRESS EMOTIONS AND FEELINGS
The subjunctive is used after verbs and expressions of feeling and emotion, such as fear, joy, sorrow, and surprise. To express your feelings to someone else, use this formula: subject pronoun + estar (conjugated) + adjective + (de) que + . . . The adjectives below will help you.

| ADJECTIVE | SPANISH | ADJECTIVE | SPANISH |
--- | --- | --- | ---
afraid | asustado(a) | furious | furioso(a) |
angry | enojado(a) | happy | alegre, feliz |
delighted | encantado(a) | proud | orgulloso(a) |
displeased | enfadado(a) | sad | triste |
embarrassed | avergonzado(a) | unhappy | infeliz |

Ella está alegre de que Uds. acepten su invitación.
She is happy that you will accept her invitation.

Estoy triste que ellos no vengan.
I’m sad that they aren’t coming.
Conjugate *tener* with the following nouns when you want to express feelings and emotions:

miedo de fear (of)

vergüenza de shame (of)

Tengo miedo de que él no diga I’m afraid that he won’t la verdad. tell the truth.

The following reflexive verbs may be conjugated and used with the subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enojarse</td>
<td>to become angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enfadarse</td>
<td>to become angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alegrársel(de)</td>
<td>to rejoice, be happy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Me alegro de que hagas el viaje I am happy that you are taking a Francia. a trip to France.

---

**TIME’S UP!**

1. Ask a friend if he wants to go to the beach.
2. Ask what’s on television.
3. Ask what kind of film is playing.
4. Say you’d like to see a comedy.
5. Invite someone to have a picnic in the country.
7. Say that the gifts please you.
8. Say: “I need a pen.”
9. Say: “Show it to me, please.”
10. Express a positive feeling about a play you saw.
This page intentionally left blank.
Planning Outdoor Activities

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Engaging in sports
• Playing the game
• Describing the weather
• Expressing negative opinions and indifference
• Using the subjunctive with expressions of doubt and after impersonal expressions

In this lesson you'll learn how to talk about sports and the weather. You'll also learn how to express your dissatisfaction or indifference toward various activities by using the subjunctive and relative pronouns.
**SPORTS**

Because sports are popular around the world, the sports listed below might be of interest to you.

The verbs *hacer* and *jugar* + *a* + definite article are commonly used to describe participation in a sport. In the list of sports, a 1 indicates that you should use the verb *hacer*, while a 2 indicates that you use *jugar*. All other verbs in the chart are listed beneath the name of the sport.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPORT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aerobics</td>
<td>los ejercicios aeróbicos¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>el béisbol²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>el baloncesto²/el básquetbol²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycling</td>
<td>montar a bicicleta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycling</td>
<td>el ciclismo¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>ir de pesca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>el fútbol americano²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golf</td>
<td>el golf²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice skating</td>
<td>patinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roller skating</td>
<td>patinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>esquiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soccer</td>
<td>el fútbol²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>la natación¹/nadar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>el tenis²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Engaging in Sports**

When speaking about sports, one might say:

- Let's play a game of . . .
- Let's have a . . . match.
- Vamos a jugar a . . .
- Hagamos un partido de . . .
- Vamos a jugar al fútbol.
- Hagamos un partido de tenis.

Once you’ve determined the sport in which you want to engage, refer to the words below to select the appropriate playing field.
FIELD | SPANISH
--- | ---
beach | la playa
course (golf) | el campo (de golf)
court | la cancha
field | el campo
gymnasium | el gimnasio
ocean | el océano
park | el parque
pool | la piscina
stadium | el estadio
track | la pista

Let’s go to the gym. Vamos al gimnasio.

It’s also important to make sure you have the appropriate and necessary equipment as listed below. Use these phrases to get you started.

I need . . . I need . . . Could you lend (rent) me . . .
Me falta(n) . . . Necesito . . . Podrías prestarme (alquilarme) . . .

EQUIPMENT | SPANISH
--- | ---
ball | la pelota
ball (basketball) | el balón
bat | el bate
bathing suit | el traje de baño
bicycle | la bicicleta
boat | el barco
fishing rod | la caña de pesca
golf clubs | los palos de golf
helmet | el casco
jogging shoes | los tenis
skates | los patines
ski bindings | las ataduras
skis | los esquís
THE WEATHER

In order to participate in any sport or outdoor activity, favorable weather conditions should prevail. The expressions in the table below will help you determine whether el pronóstico (the forecast) is encouraging: ¿Qué tiempo hace? (What’s the weather?)

The third person singular of the verb hacer—hace—is used to express many weather conditions. Hay is used to express visible conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WEATHER</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s beautiful.</td>
<td>Hace bien tiempo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s cloudy.</td>
<td>Está nublado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s cold.</td>
<td>Hace frío.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s foggy.</td>
<td>Hay niebla.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s hot.</td>
<td>Hace calor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s humid.</td>
<td>Hay humedad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s overcast.</td>
<td>Está cubierto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s pouring.</td>
<td>Hay lluvias torrenciales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s raining.</td>
<td>Llueve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s snowing.</td>
<td>Está nevando.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s sunny.</td>
<td>Hay sol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What’s the Temperature?

If you want to know the temperature, keep in mind that in Europe and Latin America the Centigrade (Celsius) thermometer is used.

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract thirty-two from the Fahrenheit temperature and multiply the remaining number by \(\frac{5}{9}\). This will give you the temperature in degrees Centigrade.

To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply the Centigrade temperature by \(\frac{9}{5}\), then add thirty-two. This will give you the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit.

Some questions and answers you will need in order to express the temperature are:

What’s the temperature? ¿Cuál es la temperatura?

It’s ten below. Hay una temperatura de diez grados bajo cero.

It’s zero. Hay una temperatura de cero grados.

It’s seventy degrees. Hay una temperatura de setenta grados.
NOTE

Use hacer to express weather conditions: Hace calor. (It's hot weather.)
Use tener to express physical conditions of a person: Tiene calor.
(He is hot.)

EXPRESSING NEGATIVE OPINIONS
An invitation, whether made in the affirmative or negative, might elicit a negative response. Use the phrases listed here to decline an invitation:

Don’t you want to come with me (us)?
¿No quiere(s) ir conmigo (con nosotros)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hate . . .</td>
<td>Odio . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like . . .</td>
<td>No me gusta . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not a fan of . .</td>
<td>No soy aficionado(a) a . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sorry but . .</td>
<td>Lo siento pero . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s too difficult.</td>
<td>Es demasiado difícil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That doesn’t interest me.</td>
<td>No me interesa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why?</td>
<td>¿Por qué?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’ve got to be kidding!</td>
<td>¡Qué va!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXPRESSING INDIFFERENCE
If you’ve been invited out and are indifferent or indecisive about whether to go or not, use one of the expressions below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPRESSION</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I don’t care.</td>
<td>No me importa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I doubt it.</td>
<td>Lo dudo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I really don’t know.</td>
<td>No sé.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It depends.</td>
<td>Depende.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn’t matter.</td>
<td>Me da igual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s the same to me.</td>
<td>Me da lo mismo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perhaps./Maybe.</td>
<td>Quizás./Tal vez.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whatever you want.</td>
<td>Como quiera(s).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

The subjunctive is used after verbs and expressions of doubt, denial, disbelief, and probability. The indicative (simple and compound tenses) is used after verbs and expressions of certainty. When certain verbs and expressions are used in the negative or the interrogative, they imply uncertainty or doubt and the subjunctive is required. When doubt is negated, certainty or probability exists and the indicative is used.

No pienso que ella pueda venir. I don’t think she can come.

No dudo que él nos acompañará. I don’t doubt that he will accompany us.

Él sabe que tú irás al partido. He knows you will go to the game.

Note that all of the following expressions are followed by que and another clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE (CERTAINTY)</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE (UNCERTAINTY)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo creo</td>
<td>I believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cree Ud. . . . ?</td>
<td>Do you believe . . . ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo estoy seguro(a)</td>
<td>I’m sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo no dudo</td>
<td>I don’t doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo no niego</td>
<td>I don’t deny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo opino</td>
<td>I’m of the opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo pienso</td>
<td>I think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Piensa Ud. . . ?</td>
<td>Do you think . . . ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo sé</td>
<td>I know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER IMPERSONAL EXPRESSIONS

The subjunctive is also used after the impersonal expressions that show doubt, emotion, or opinion. The following expressions can be used to state either positive or negative feelings and can also be used to persuade someone to follow a course of action.
**EXPRESSION** | **SPANISH**
---|---
it's a pity | es una lástima
it could be | puede ser
it's curious | es curioso
it's doubtful | es dudoso
it's enough | es suficiente
it's fair | es justo
it's good | es bueno
it’s impossible | es imposible
it’s incredible | es increíble
it’s interesting | es interesante
it’s nice | es bueno
it’s normal | es normal
it’s possible | es posible
it’s strange | es extraño
it’s surprising | es sorprendente
it’s unfair | es injusto
it seems | parece

Note that these expressions take the subjunctive even when preceded by *no*:

- It is not surprising that you will accompany us.  
  No es sorprendiente que Ud. nos acompañe.

- It is not probable that he wants to go out.  
  No es probable que él quiera salir.

The following impersonal expressions show certainty and, therefore, require the indicative:

| **SPANISH** | **MEANING** | **SPANISH** | **MEANING** |
---|---|---|---|
es cierto | it is certain, sure | es exacto | it is exact |
es claro | it is clear | es seguro | it is sure |
es evidente | it is evident | es verdad | it is true |
Es claro que ella vendrá. It’s clear that she will come.

But:

No es claro que ella venga. It’s not clear that she will come.

**CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS**

A contrary-to-fact condition expresses what would have happened had circumstances been different from what they currently are. In other words, you are talking about a hypothetical situation. The conditional mood expresses what would happen and the *si* clause, using a verb in the imperfect subjunctive, expresses if something else occurred: *Yo estaría contenta si tú aceptaras la invitación.* (I would be happy if you accepted the invitation.) (See Chapter 20:00 for more on *si* clauses.)

**SEQUENCE OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE**

The tense (time frame) of the subjunctive in a dependent clause depends on the tense of the verb used in the main clause. Always keep in mind the time to which you are referring when choosing the tenses to use. For example, look at the chart below. If the main clause is in the present, you may use either the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, depending on the meaning you wish to convey. If, however, the verb in the main clause is in the preterite, you may only use either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. Use the following chart to help pick the correct tense of the subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAIN CLAUSE</th>
<th>DEPENDENT CLAUSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>present subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>perfect subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfect</td>
<td>imperfect subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preterite</td>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditional</td>
<td>pluperfect subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TIME’S UP!

1. Invite someone to go swimming.
2. Ask someone if he/she plays golf.
3. Suggest that someone play tennis with you.
4. Say you need skates.
5. Ask someone if they could lend you a bicycle.
6. Ask someone for today’s weather.
7. Give a simplified version of today’s weather forecast in Spanish. Make sure to include the temperature.
8. Say that you don’t like to play tennis because it’s too difficult.
9. Say that you doubt that your friend will play basketball.
10. Say that you are sure that the weather will be nice.
This page intentionally left blank.
Making Comparisons

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Making comparisons of inequality
• Comparing adjectives
• Comparing adverbs
• Comparing nouns
• Making comparisons of equality

In this lesson you’ll learn how to make comparisons of inequality using adjectives, adverbs, and nouns. You’ll also learn how to use these words to make statements showing equality.
**ANIMALS**

Animals are compared all the time for their prowess, their size, their speed, their intelligence, and their good and bad traits. The list below gives the names of animals commonly used in comparisons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANIMAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ANIMAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td>el ave, el pájaro</td>
<td>giraffe</td>
<td>la jirafa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull</td>
<td>el toro</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>el caballo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>el gato</td>
<td>leopard</td>
<td>el leopardo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheetah</td>
<td>el guepardo</td>
<td>lion</td>
<td>el león</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken, hen</td>
<td>la gallina</td>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>el mono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>la vaca</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>el cochino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>el perro</td>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>el conejo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>el elefante</td>
<td>tiger</td>
<td>el tigre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish</td>
<td>el pez</td>
<td>whale</td>
<td>la ballena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fox</td>
<td>el zorro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IN THE CLASSROOM**

In a classroom setting, students are constantly comparing grades, teachers, classes, class requirements, and homework assignments. Teachers also have a habit of comparing their students. The following list will give you the vocabulary you need to make classroom comparisons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backpack</td>
<td>la mochila</td>
<td>homework</td>
<td>la tarea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board</td>
<td>la pizarra</td>
<td>principal</td>
<td>el director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>el libro</td>
<td>pupil</td>
<td>el (la) estudiante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalk</td>
<td>la tiza</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>la escuela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classroom</td>
<td>la sala de clase</td>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>el profesor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desk</td>
<td>el escritorio</td>
<td>test</td>
<td>el examen, la prueba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grade</td>
<td>la nota</td>
<td>textbook</td>
<td>el libro de texto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammar</td>
<td>la gramática</td>
<td>university</td>
<td>la universidad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE

In Spanish there is a distinction between the terms for course and subject. El curso has more of a connotation of an individual lesson, while la materia refers to the discipline of the subject itself:

- Da un curso de español. He gives Spanish lessons.
- El español es una materia fácil. Spanish is an easy subject.

By the end of this chapter you will be able to compare the subjects listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>el arte</td>
<td>geography</td>
<td>la geografía</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biology</td>
<td>la biología</td>
<td>history</td>
<td>la historia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemistry</td>
<td>la química</td>
<td>mathematics</td>
<td>las matemáticas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>el inglés</td>
<td>music</td>
<td>la música</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>el francés</td>
<td>science</td>
<td>la ciencia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMPARISONS OF INEQUALITY

Comparisons of inequality show that two things are not equal. These comparisons have three forms:

- The positive states the fact:
  - Adjective: Spanish is easy.
  - Adverb: A tiger runs quickly.
  - Noun: I make mistakes.

- The comparative states more or less:
  - Adjective: Spanish is easier than math. Math is harder than history.
  - Adverb: A tiger runs more quickly than a turtle. A tiger runs less quickly than a cheetah.
  - Noun: I make more mistakes than Robert. I make fewer mistakes than Maria.

- The superlative states the most or the least:
  - Adjective: Spanish is the easiest. Math is the hardest.
  - Adverb: A turtle runs the slowest of all animals. A cheetah runs the fastest of all animals.
Most comparatives in English end in *-er* or use the word *less* or *more*. Most superlatives in English end in *-est* or use the word *least* or *most*.

- El tigre es grande. The tiger is big.
- El caballo es más grande. The horse is bigger.
- El elefante es el más grande. The elephant is the biggest.

**Comparison of Adjectives**

Adjectives are compared as follows:

- **Positive**: *interesante* (interesting): *El español es interesante.* (Spanish is interesting.)

- **Comparative**: *menos interesante* (less interesting), *más interesante* (more interesting):

  - Las matemáticas son menos interesantes que la historia. Math is less interesting than history.
  - El español es más interesante que la historia. Spanish is more interesting than history.

- **Superlative**: *el (la/los/las) menos interesante(s)* (the least interesting), *el (la/los/las) más interesante(s)* (the most interesting):

  - Las matemáticas son las menos interesantes. Math is the least interesting.
  - El español es el más interesante. Spanish is the most interesting.

A few adjectives have irregular comparatives and superlatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bueno(a)(s)</td>
<td>mejor(es)</td>
<td>el/la (los/las) mejor(es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>(the) best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malo(a)(s)</td>
<td>peor(es)</td>
<td>el/la (los/las) peores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>(the) worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pequeño(a)(s)</td>
<td>más pequeño(a)(s)</td>
<td>el/la (los/las) más pequeño(a)(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller (size)</td>
<td>the smallest (size)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pequeño(a)(s)  menor(es)  el/la (los/las) menor(es)
small      lesser, younger       the least, the youngest

grande(s)  más grande(s)  el/la (los/las) más grande(s)
big         bigger            biggest

grande(s)  mayor(es)  el/la (los/las) mayor(es)
great       greater, older    the greatest, the oldest

El perro es el mejor amigo del hombre.  A dog is man’s best friend.
Sus notas son peores que las mías.  His grades are worse than mine.
Él es más pequeño que su hermano.  He is smaller than his brother.
Es el hermano menor.  He is the youngest brother.
Es la casa más grande.  It’s the biggest house.
Es el mayor de la familia.  He is the oldest in the family.

In order to form the comparative and superlative of adjectives correctly, take note of the following rules:

• In the comparative, use adjectives to compare two or more things in one sentence and introduce the second element with que (than):

    El español es más interesante que la historia.  Spanish is more interesting than history.

    El tigre es menos grande que el elefante.  The tiger is shorter (less big) than the elephant.

• The second element of the comparison may be a noun, a subject pronoun, a possessive pronoun, an adjective, an adverb, or a clause:

    Noun: La biología es más fácil que la física.  (Biology is easier than physics.)

    Subject Pronoun: Ella es más baja que yo.  (She is shorter than I.)

    Possessive Pronoun: Su perro es más grande que el mío.  (His dog is bigger than mine.)

    Adjective: Ellos son más dotados que inteligentes.  (They are more gifted than intelligent.)
Adverb: Estudió más que antes.
(He studied more than before.)

Clause: Ellas son más importantes de lo que yo pensaba.
(They are more important than I thought.)

- Comparative and superlative adjectives agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify:

  Una vaca es menos feroz que un tigre.
  A cow is less ferocious than a tiger.

  Los profesores son más inteligentes que los alumnos.
  Teachers are more intelligent than students.

- To express “in” or “of” in a superlative sentence, use the preposition de + definite article: La jirafa es el animal más alta del mundo.
  (The giraffe is the tallest animal in the world.)

- In a superlative sentence, you may place the noun between the article (el/lla/llo/las) and the adjective: Es el perro más precioso de todos.
  (It’s the most beautiful dog of all.)

- Mejor and peor generally precede the noun, whereas mayor and menor generally follow the noun (when comparing differences in age):

  mi mejor amigo
  my best friend

  las peores películas
  the worst films

  mi hermana mayor
  my older sister

  su hermano menor
  his younger brother

  de mayor importancia
  of more importance

The antonyms (opposites) in the following chart should help you when making comparisons using adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ANTONYM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancho</td>
<td>wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antiguo</td>
<td>old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bajo</td>
<td>low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
caliente  hot  frío  cold
contento  happy  triste  unhappy
corto  short  largo  long
fácil  easy  difícil  hard
fuerte  strong  débil  weak
grande  big  pequeño  little
guapo  handsome  feo  ugly
limpio  clean  sucio  dirty
pobre  poor  rico  rich
viejo  old  nuevo  new

Comparison of Adverbs
Adverbs are compared as follows:

• Positive: rápidamente (quickly): Los perros corren rápidamente. (Dogs run quickly.)
• Comparative: menos rápidamente (less quickly), más rápidamente (more quickly):

Los perros corren menos rápidamente que los caballos.
Dogs run slower (less quickly) than horses.

Los guepardos corren más rápidamente que los caballos.
Cheetahs run faster than horses.

• Superlative: menos rápidamente (the least quickly), más rápidamente (the most quickly):

Los guepardos son los que corren más rápidamente.
Cheetahs are the ones that run the fastest.

Los perros son los que corren menos rápidamente.
Dogs are the ones that run the slowest.

Because there is no distinction between the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs, use que to express “than” in the comparative:
Los guepardos corren más rápidamente que los perros.

Cheetahs run faster than dogs.

Los perros corren menos rápidamente que los guepardos.

Dogs run slower than cheetahs.

In order to form the comparative and superlative of adverbs correctly, take note of the following rules:

• In the comparative, use adverbs to compare two or more things in one sentence and introduce the second element with que (than):

  Los perros corren menos rápidamente que los caballos.
  Dogs run slower than horses.

  Los tigres corren más rápidamente que los gatos.
  Tigers run faster than cats.

• In an affirmative sentence, de (than) replaces que before a number:

  Gané más (menos) de cien dólares.
  I earned more (less) than a hundred dollars.

  But:

  No gané más que cien dólares.
  I didn’t earn more than a hundred dollars.

• The second element of the comparison may be a noun, a subject pronoun, a possessive pronoun, an adverb, or a clause:

  Noun: Los gatos juegan más silenciosamente que los leones.
  (Cats play more quietly than lions.)

  Subject Pronoun: Ella habla más rápidamente que yo.
  (She speaks more quickly than I.)

  Possessive Pronoun: Su perro corre más rápidamente que el mío.
  (Her dog runs faster than mine.)

  Adverb: Él trabaja más rápidamente que bien.
  (He is working more quickly than well.)

  Clause: Los guepardos corren más rápidamente de lo que yo pensaba.
  (Cheetahs run faster than I thought.)
If the second clause in a comparison has a different verb, use *de* together with a form of the article (*el, la, los, las*) when necessary: *Yo compré más libros de los que Ud. me recomendó.* (I bought more books than you recommended.)

To express “in” or “of” in a superlative sentence, use the preposition *de* + definite article: *Los guepardos son los animales que corren más rápidamente de todos los animales.* (Cheetahs are the animals that run the fastest of all animals.)

### Comparison of Nouns

Nouns are compared in the same way as adjectives and adverbs:

- **Comparative:** *menos que* (fewer [than]), *más que* (more [than]):
  
  *Tengo menos materias que Ud.*
  
  I have fewer subjects than you.

  *Un perro come más carne que legumbres.*
  
  A dog eats more meat than vegetables.

- **Superlative:** *lo menos* (the least), *lo más* (the most):
  
  *Hace lo menos posible de la clase.*
  
  She does the least possible in the class.

  *Haces lo más errores posibles de todos los alumnos.*
  
  You make the most possible mistakes of all the students.

To form the comparative and superlative of nouns correctly, take note of the following rules:

- In the comparative, use nouns to compare two or more things in one sentence and introduce the second element with *que* (than):
  
  *Tengo menos tareas que tú.*  I have less homework than you.

  *Tienes más trabajo que yo.*  You have more work than I (do).

- The second element of the comparison may be a noun, a subject pronoun, a possessive pronoun, or a clause:
  
  **Noun:** *Tengo mejores notas que esos alumnos.*
  
  (I have better grades than those students.)

  **Subject Pronoun:** *Tiene más libros que yo.*
  
  (He has more books than I.)
Possessive Pronoun: Mi clase tiene más alumnos que la tuya.  
(My class has more students than yours.)

Clause: Una jirafa come más hierba de lo que yo pensaba.  
(A giraffe eats more grass than I thought.)

• To express “in” or “of” in a superlative sentence, use the preposition de + definite article: Hace lo más trabajo posible de todos los profesores. (He does the most possible work of all the teachers.)

Comparison of Verbs
When comparing infinitives of verbs, use que + an infinitive in the second part of the comparison:

Prefiero ir al cine que ir al teatro.
I prefer going to the theater rather than to the movies.

Me gustaría más comer pescado que comer carne.
I’d rather eat fish than meat.

COMPARISONS OF EQUALITY
Comparisons of equality show that two things are the same. Follow these simple formulas:

• Tan + adjective or adverb + como (as . . . as):
  
  Ella es tan inteligente como su hermano.
  She is as intelligent as her brother.

  Hablo español tan elocuentemente como tú.
  I speak Spanish as eloquently as you.

• Tanto(-a, -os, -as) [used as an adjective] + noun + como (as much/many . . . as). Tanto remains invariable when used as an adverb.

  Él tiene tantos amigos como tú.
  He has as many friends as you.

  No tengo tanta paciencia como mi esposo.
  I don’t have as much patience as my husband.
Ella lee tanto como su hermano y yo.

She reads as much as her brother and I (do).

THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE

Use the absolute superlative when no comparison is involved. Simply add -ísimo, -ísima, ísimos, ísimas to the adjective according to the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) of the noun being described. The meaning is the same as muy + adjective:

La blusa es muy cara.      The blouse is very expensive.

La blusa es carísima.

Los perros son muy lindos. The dogs are very sweet.

Los perros son lindísimos.

Note the following exceptions to the rule:

• To express “very much” use muchísimo:

  Lo quiero mucho.    I love him a lot.

  Lo quiero muchísimo.

• Drop the final vowel of an adjective before adding -ísimo:

  La casa es muy grande.    The house is very big.

  La casa es grandísima.

• Adjectives ending in -co (-ca for feminine adjectives), -go (-ga for feminine adjectives), or -z change c to qu, g to gu, and z to c before adding -ísimo:

  La limonada es muy fresca.    The lemonade is very fresh.

  La limonada es fresquísima.

  Las avenidas son muy largas.    The streets are very long.

  Las avenidas son larguísimas.

  El tigre es muy feroz.    The tiger is very fierce.

  El tigre es ferocísimo.
An adverb may be formed by adding -mente to the feminine form (-ísim) of the adjective:

Ella canta muy lentamente. She sings very slowly.
Ella canta lentísimoamente.

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE EXPRESSIONS
The following comparative and superlative expressions will help you speak more colloquially:

• hacer lo mejor que puede (to do one’s best): Hacemos lo mejor que podemos. (We do our best.)
• hacer lo más (menos) posible (as much [little] as possible): Este muchacho hace lo más posible. (This boy does as much as possible.)
• lo más (menos) . . . posible (as . . . as possible): Ella trabaja lo menos rápidamente posible. (She works as slowly as possible.)
• cuanto más . . . más (the more . . . the more): Cuanto más come, más quiere. (The more you eat, the more you want.)
• cuanto menos . . . menos (the less . . . the less): Cuanto menos estudia, menos aprende. (The less you study, the less you learn.)
• cuanto más . . . menos (the more . . . the less): Cuanto más come, menos tiene hambre. (The more you eat, the less hungry you are.)
• cada vez más (more and more): Aprendes cada vez más rápidamente. (You learn more and more quickly.)
• cada vez menos (less and less): Los alumnos descansan cada vez menos. (The students rest less and less.)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER SUPERLATIVE EXPRESSIONS
Use the subjunctive after superlative expressions to show an opinion, a feeling, or an emotion:

El español es la mejor lengua (indicative) que Ud. pueda estudiar (subjunctive).

Spanish is the best language you can study.

Sé que este mapa es el peor (indicative) que se venda (subjunctive).

I know that this map is the worst that they sell.
Use the indicative after a superlative to state a fact when no opinion on the part of the speaker is involved. The indicative is also used after the superlative of an adverb:

Es su mejor amiga que llamó. It’s his best friend who called.
Corre lo más rápidamente que puede. He is running as fast as he can.

**TIME’S UP!**

1. Compare two animals.
2. Compare two classroom subjects.
3. Compare two people using adjectives.
4. Use the superlative to describe a person you know.
5. Compare the way in which two people do things using adverbs.
6. Use the superlative to say what someone does best.
7. Say that you have more work than I.
8. Make a comparison of equality between you and a family member.
9. Say that you have as much patience as your friend.
10. Use the subjunctive to say that you think this is the best book you can buy.
This page intentionally left blank.
Meeting Your Needs on the Road and Elsewhere

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Acquiring hotel accommodations
• Using the subjunctive
• Using relative pronouns

In this lesson you’ll learn much about selecting the proper accommodations and getting the facilities and services you require. You’ll also learn more about the subjunctive, and how to make exclamations and use relative pronouns.
HOTEL ACCOMMODATIONS AND AMENITIES

The following is a list of the amenities you may desire when staying in a hotel. Start with the question: ¿Hay . . . ? (Is [Are] there . . . ?)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AMENITY</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>air conditioning</td>
<td>el aire acondicionado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a doorman</td>
<td>un portero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an elevator</td>
<td>un ascensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a laundry service</td>
<td>una lavandería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a maid service</td>
<td>el servicio de limpieza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooms for the disabled</td>
<td>habitaciones equipadas para los minusválidos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a swimming pool</td>
<td>una piscina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>la televisión</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis courts</td>
<td>canchas de tenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valet parking</td>
<td>la atendencia del garaje</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are traveling with a pet, you may be surprised to learn that animals are accepted as family members in most hotel and restaurant establishments. You may want to ask: ¿Acepta Ud. perros en el establecimiento? (Do you accept dogs?)

Room Needs

When booking a room, if you have a preference as to view or location, you can make your wishes known by saying the following: Quisiera una habitación . . . (I would like to have a room . . .):

- with a balcony: con balcón
- with a garden: con jardín
- with a terrace: con una terraza
- on the courtyard: que dé al patio
- on the garden: que dé al jardín
- on the sea: con vista al mar

If you’ve found that you are missing something you need, use the words and expressions that follow to get what you desire:
I would like . . . Quisiera . . .
I need . . . Me falta(n) . . .
I need . . . Necesito . . .
a bar of soap una barra de jabón
a blanket una manta
a hair dryer un secador de cabello
hangers unas perchas
a pillow una almohada
a towel una toalla
toilet paper un rollo de papel higiénico

NOTE

Not all hotel rooms in Spanish-speaking countries have private bathroom facilities. If that is what you want, ask the following: ¿Tienen las habitaciones baño privado? (Do the rooms have private toilet facilities?)

EXCLAMATIONS

Exclamations can be used to give your positive or negative opinion about something. Make sure to use an inverted exclamation point (!) before the exclamation and a regular one (!) after it. Use the adjectives below to express your pleasure or displeasure by saying What a . . . ! or How much/many . . . !

¡Qué . . . ! What (a) . . . ! How . . . !
¡Cuánto(a) . . . ! How much . . . !
¡Cuántos(as) . . . ! How many . . . !
¡Qué hotel! What a hotel!
¡Qué grande es! How large it is!
¡Cuántas ventanas tiene! How many windows it has!

To make an exclamation more emphatic, use más or tan before the adjective: ¡Qué habitación tan (más) lujosa! (What a luxurious room!)
THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THIRD PERSON COMMANDS

Use the subjunctive in third person singular or plural commands:

Que entre él (ella). Let (Have) him (her) come in.
Que hablen ellos (ellas). Let (Have) them speak.
Que sean felices. May they be happy.
¡Viva el rey! Long live the king!

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS

Use the subjunctive after certain conjunctions when uncertainty, doubt, purpose, or anticipation is implied.

Conjunctions are words that connect and relate vocabulary words and pronouns, as well as two clauses in a sentence. You use them repeatedly in speaking and writing. Conjunctions do not change their form to indicate meaning.

You may use the subjunctive with the following conjunctions. Those with an asterisk (*) always take the subjunctive, because doubt, uncertainty, or purpose is implied:

- Conjunctions that express time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hasta que</td>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*antes (de) que</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yo esperaré hasta que venga el portero.
I’ll wait until the porter comes.
(Expresses doubt: he may not come.)

Yo esperé hasta que vino.
I waited until he came.
(Expresses certainty: he showed up.)

- Conjunctions that express purpose:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a fin de que</td>
<td>in order that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*para que</td>
<td>in order that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de modo que</td>
<td>so that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de manera que</td>
<td>so that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yo saldré a fin de que la criada pueda limpiar la casa.

I’ll leave so that the maid can clean the room.

(Expresses purpose: so that she may clean.)

• Conjunctions that express condition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*con tal (de) que</td>
<td>provided that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a menos que</td>
<td>unless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*en caso de que</td>
<td>in case (that)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a condición (de) que</td>
<td>on condition of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Me quedaré en este hotel con tal de que tengan una piscina.

I’ll stay in this hotel provided that they have a pool.

(Expresses doubt: maybe there is a pool and maybe there isn’t.)

• Conjunction that expresses concession:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aunque</td>
<td>although</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aceptaré esta habitación aunque sea pequeña.

I’ll take this room although it may be small.

(Expresses doubt: maybe the room is small and maybe it isn’t.)

Aceptaré esta habitación aunque es pequeña.

I’ll take this room although it is small.

(Expresses certainty: the room is small.)

• Conjunction that expresses negation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*sin que</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

El portero se fue sin que yo lo supiera.

The porter left without my knowing it.

(Expresses purpose: in such a way that I didn’t notice.)
• Conjunction that expresses fear:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>por miedo (de) que</td>
<td>for fear that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Telefoneo por miedo de que la criada no venga.
I’m calling for fear that the maid isn’t coming.

(Expresses emotion: shows fear)

The following conjunctions use the indicative to refer to past or present actions or events, and the subjunctive to refer to future events that are considered uncertain:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>así que</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuando</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>después (de) que</td>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en cuanto</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasta que</td>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luego que</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mientras que</td>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tan pronto como</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ella limpió su habitación mientras comían.
She cleaned their room while they ate.

But:
Ella limpiará su habitación mientras coman.
She will clean their room while they are (will be) eating.

Use the infinitive after these conjunctions when the subject does not change:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUNCTION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>para</td>
<td>in order to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porque</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antes de</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Llamó para reservar una habitación. He called to reserve a room.
Salío sin decir nada. He left without saying anything.
Te telefonearé antes de salir. I’ll call you before leaving.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES
Use the subjunctive in a relative clause if the antecedent (the person or thing mentioned in the main clause) is indefinite, desired but not yet found, or nonexistent (or whose existence is in doubt):

Busco un hotel que sea cómodo.
I’m looking for a comfortable hotel.

¿Conoce Ud. a alguien que pueda ayudarme?
Do you know anyone who can help me?

No puedo encontrar a nadie que sepa ese número de teléfono.
I can’t find anyone who knows that phone number.

But:

Conozco a alguien que puede ayudarle.
I know someone who can help you.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS
A relative pronoun (who, which, that) joins a main clause to a dependent clause. This pronoun introduces the dependent clause that describes someone or something mentioned in the main clause. The person or thing the pronoun refers to is called the antecedent. A relative clause may serve as a subject, a direct object, or an object of a preposition. The following list shows the relative pronouns in Spanish:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ANTECEDENT</th>
<th>ANTECEDENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>Thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct object</td>
<td>que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object of all prepositions</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>de quien(es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>con</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Que**

*Que* (who, whom, which, that), the most frequently used relative pronoun, is the subject or object of a relative clause and may refer to people or things.

Es el *hombre* que ganó un premio.
He’s the man who won a prize.

(antecedent = person = subject of relative clause)

Es el *hotel* que ganó un premio.
It’s the hotel that won a prize.

(antecedent = thing = subject of relative clause)

Es un *hombre* que yo admiro.
He’s a man I admire.

(antecedent = person = object of relative clause)

Es una *pintura* que yo admiro.
It’s a painting I admire.

(antecedent = thing = object of relative clause)

Although frequently omitted in English, the relative pronoun is always expressed in Spanish: *Es un país que yo visito frecuentemente.* (It’s a country [that] I visit often.)

**Que** and **Quien** (Objects of a Preposition)

*Que* (which, whom) is used as the object of a preposition referring primarily to things: *Es el hotel de que yo hablo.* (That’s the hotel about which I am speaking.) *Quien* (whom) is used as the object of a preposition referring to people: *Miguel es el muchacho con quien yo viajo.* (Michael is the boy with whom I am traveling.) Note that in both cases the preposition precedes the relative pronoun *quien* or *que.*

*Quien* may be used in the following circumstances:

- Instead of *que* to introduce a clause not necessary to the meaning of the sentence: *Arturo, quien me ha escrito, quiere hablarme.* (Arturo, who wrote to me, wants to speak to me.)
- As a direct object. The personal *a* is required in *a quien* (whom), which may replace *que* as the direct object in more formal style: *Son los hombres a quienes (que) yo vi esta mañana.* (Those are the men I saw this morning.)
• As a subject to express “he (she, those, the one, the ones) who”:
  *Quien trabaja mucho, gana mucho.* (The one who works a lot, earns a lot.)

**NOTE**

*El (la, los, las) que* may be used in place of *quien* as a subject:

*El que trabaja mucho, gana mucho.* (He who works a lot, earns a lot.)

**El Cual and El Que**

The longer forms of the relative pronouns, *el cual* (*la cual, los cuales, las cuales*) and *el que* (*la que, los que, las que*), are used as follows:

• For clarity and emphasis when there are two antecedents:

  *El (la, los, las) que* or *el (la, los, las) cual(es)* may be used to refer to
  the latter (the one that is mentioned last):

  La madre de Julio, el que (el cual) esta enfermo, le prepara sopa.
  The mother of Julio, who is sick, prepares soup for him.
  (Julio is sick.)

  *El (la, los, las) que* or *el (la, los, las) cual(es)* can also be used to refer
  to the former (the one that is mentioned first), especially when the two
  antecedents are of the same gender:

  La madre de Julio, la que (la cual) esta enferma, esta en cama.
  Julio’s mother, who is sick, is in bed.
  (The mother is sick.)

  El padre de Julio, el que (el cual) esta enfermo, esta en cama.
  Julio’s father, who is sick, is in bed.
  (The father is sick.)

• After prepositions other than *a, con, de, and en* to refer to things:

  *Es la compañía para la cual (la que) él trabaja.* (It’s the company for
  which he works.)

  Note that *de + el = del* before *que* and *cual*: *Es el edificio delante del que
  (del cual) él se cayó.* (That’s the building in front of which he fell.)
Lo Que and Lo Cual
The relative pronoun lo que (lo cual) is the neuter form of el que and is used when there is no antecedent noun as follows:

• Lo que means “what (that which)” and is the subject of a verb:
  Me pregunto lo que pasó. (I wonder what happened.)
• Lo que means “what (that which)” and is the object of a verb:
  Yo sé lo que quiere decir eso. (I know what that means.)
• Lo que is used after the pronoun todo to express “everything that” or “all that”:

  Me gusta todo lo que es español. I like everything that is Spanish.
  No escuché todo lo que Ud. dijo. I didn’t hear everything you said.

Cuyo
Cuyo(-a,-os,-as) (whose) is a relative adjective that must agree in gender and number with the people or things possessed, not with the possessor:
La casa, cuyas puertas son rojas, es la mía. (The house, whose doors are red, is mine.)

TIME’S UP!

1. Ask if your hotel has a garage.
2. Say you want a room with an ocean view.
3. Say you need another pillow.
4. Use an exclamation to say: “What a great room!”
5. Use the subjunctive to say: “Let them come in!”
6. Say that you will stay at the hotel provided there are tennis courts.
7. Say that you're searching for a luxurious hotel.
8. Ask if there’s a person who speaks English.
9. Say: “That’s the room I want.”
10. Say that you have everything that you need.
MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Using adverbs and nouns of quantity
- Selecting an eating establishment and getting started
- Selecting meats, poultry, and fish
- Selecting vegetables and fruits
- Cooking to perfection
- Using or avoiding herbs, condiments, and spices
- Selecting a drink and a dessert
- Using proper restaurant etiquette

In this chapter you’ll learn how to buy the quantity of food you want and how to order in a restaurant.
QUANTITIES
Should you decide to purchase food in a store in a Spanish-speaking area, you’ll want to be able to express the correct quantity. In the Spanish-speaking world, the metric system is used for measuring quantities of food: Liquids are measured in liters, and solids are measured in kilograms. If you are accustomed to dealing with ounces, pounds, pints, quarts, and gallons, the list below gives you a quick conversion chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APPROXIMATE DRY MEASURES</th>
<th>APPROXIMATE LIQUID MEASURES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ounce = 28 grams</td>
<td>1 ounce = 30 milliliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ pound = 125 grams</td>
<td>16 ounces (1 pint) = 475 milliliters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>½ pound = 250 grams</td>
<td>32 ounces (1 quart) = 950 milliliters (approximately 1 liter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¾ pound = 375 grams</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 pounds = 500 grams</td>
<td>1 gallon = 3.75 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 pounds = 1000 grams</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1 kilogram)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverbs and adjectives of quantity can help you to generalize or be more specific about the amounts you need. They are used to give an unspecified amount:

- as much, many: tanto(-a,-os,-as)
- enough: bastante, suficiente
- how much, many: cuanto(-a,-os,-as)
- less, fewer: menos
- a little, few: poco(-a,-os,-as)
- more: más
- much, many: mucho(-a,-os,-as)
- so much, many: tanto(-a,-os,-as)
- too much, many: demasiado

Adverbs of quantity do not require the use of the preposition de (of): No tengo bastante carne. (I don’t have enough meat.)
Nouns of quantity allow for a measurement based on weight or the type of container as shown here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEASUREMENT</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 pounds of</td>
<td>un kilo de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bag of</td>
<td>un saco de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bar of</td>
<td>una tableta de, una barra de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bottle of</td>
<td>una botella de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a box of</td>
<td>una caja de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a can of</td>
<td>una lata de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dozen</td>
<td>una docena de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a package of</td>
<td>un paquete de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a slice of</td>
<td>un trozo de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns of quantity are followed by de to express of. No definite article is used: *Deme quinientos gramos de carne, por favor.* (Give me a pound of meat, please.)

To ask for or to refer to an unspecified quantity (to say that you want part of a whole [*some* or *any*]) simply use the noun:

- Deme jamón, por favor. Please give me some ham.
- No tenemos carne. We don’t have any meat.

Use the definite article (*el, la, los, las*) with nouns in a general sense:

- Me gusta el chocolate. I like chocolate.

But:

- Deme chocolate. Give me some chocolate.

Use *un* or *una* when speaking about one portion or serving.

- Un café, por favor. A coffee, please.
- Una lata de café, por favor. A can of coffee, please.
EATING ESTABLISHMENTS
The Spanish-speaking world offers a wide variety of eating establishments to suit your hunger and your pocketbook, whether you are eating breakfast (el desayuno), lunch (el almuerzo), dinner (la cena), or a mid-morning or late afternoon snack (la merienda):

- **Un bar, una tasca, or una taberna**: A pub or bar in Spain in which drinks and small snacks known as tapas or pinchos are served.
- **Un café**: A small neighborhood restaurant.
- **Una cafetería**: A small, informal café where snacks and drinks are served.
- **Una cantina**: A Spanish-American men’s bar where women are excluded.
- **Una cervecería**: A pub specializing in barreled German beer and wine.
- **Una fonda, hostería, venta, or posada**: An inn specializing in regional dishes.
- **Una hacienda**: A Spanish-American ranch-style restaurant.
- **Un merendero or chiringuito**: An outdoor stand, generally located at the beach, that sells seafood, drinks, and ice cream.

FOODS
Whether you are dining in or out, knowing the names of Spanish foods will help you get exactly what you like to eat. The tables and lists that follow will help you with your choices from soup to nuts and will serve as useful tools in deciphering a Spanish menu.

Appetizers (Los Aperitivos)
Chances are that you will not be ordering a cocktail in the restaurant before your dinner. This is because in the Spanish-speaking world, it is customary to stop off before dinner at a bar, and in Spain, a tapas bar. Some tapas bars offer a wide variety of appetizers, while others serve only one or two kinds. Tell your waiter: *Para empezar, me gustaría (yo deseo, yo quiero) . . . * (To begin, I’ll have . . . ) Then choose from the appetizers listed below.

- artichokes  alcachofas
- eggs  huevos
- mushrooms  champiñones
- snails  caracoles
- spicy sausage  chorizo
- tortilla chips  tostadas
Soups (Las Sopas)
You can expect to find the following soups on a Spanish menu:

- **cazuela**: spicy fish, vegetable, or meat soup
- **gazpacho**: cold puréed uncooked vegetables
- **potaje madrileño**: thick, puréed cod, spinach, and chickpea soup
- **pozole**: pork and hominy soup
- **sopa de ajo**: garlic soup
- **sopa de verduras**: green vegetable soup

Main Meals (Los Platos Principales)
Whether you go to the butcher (a la carnicería), to the delicatessen (a la charcutería), or to dine out, the names of the meats, fowl, and fish will come in handy. To select the meal you want, say: *Quisiera* . . . (I would like . . .)

Meat (Las Carnes)

- **bacon**: el tocino
- **beef**: la carne de res
- **chop**: la chuleta
- **ham**: el jamón
- **lamb**: el cordero, el borrego
- **oxtails**: el rabo de buey
- **pork**: el cerdo
- **roast beef**: el rosbif
- **sausage**: la salchicha
- **sirloin**: el solomillo
- **steak**: el bistec
- **veal**: la ternera

Fowl and Game (La Carne Ave y de Caza)

- **chicken**: el pollo
- **duck**: el pato
- **goose**: el ganso
turkey el pavo

venison el venado

**Fish and Seafood (Los Pescados y los Mariscos)**

- anchovy la anchoa
- bass la merluza
- clam la almeja
- codfish el bacalao
- crab el cangrejo
- lobster la langosta
- mussel el mejillón
- octopus el pulpo
- oyster la ostra
- shrimp los camarones, las gambas
- squid el calamar
- tuna el atún

---

**NOTE**

Rice (el arroz) is a very important staple in Spain and is used as the base for the ever-popular paella. This dish varies from region to region but always contains saffron-flavored rice. The most popular is paella valenciana, with chicken, seafood, peas, and tomatoes.

**Salad (La Ensalada)**

Refer to the following lists for the names of vegetables, fruits, and nuts that you might like in your salad.

**Vegetables (Las Legumbres)**

- beans (green) las judías
- broccoli el brécol
- cabbage la col
- carrots las zanahorías
- corn el maíz
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetable</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cucumber</td>
<td>el pepino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lettuce</td>
<td>la lechuga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onion</td>
<td>la cebolla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peas</td>
<td>los guisantes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peppers</td>
<td>las pimientas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>la patata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spinach</td>
<td>la espinaca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squash</td>
<td>el calabacín</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>el tomate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fruits (Las Frutas)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>la manzana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avocado</td>
<td>el aguacate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banana</td>
<td>la banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grape</td>
<td>la uva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>la lima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lime</td>
<td>el limón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olive</td>
<td>la aceituna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>la naranja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pear</td>
<td>la pera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pineapple</td>
<td>la piña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raisin</td>
<td>la pasita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>la fresa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nuts (Las Nueces)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nut</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>almond</td>
<td>la almendra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chestnut</td>
<td>la castaña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hazelnut</td>
<td>la avellana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walnut</td>
<td>la nuez</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Eggs (Huevos)
Eggs (huevos) are quite popular in the Spanish-speaking world, but not for breakfast. Refer to the following list to ask for eggs prepared the way you like them:

- fried with spicy tomato sauce: fritos rancheros
- hard-boiled: duros
- omelette: una tortilla
- poached: escalfados
- scrambled: revueltos

Cooking It to Perfection
To ensure that your main course is cooked to your liking, specify how you want it by saying: Lo (La, Los, Las) quiero . . . (I want it . . . )

- baked: horneado
- boiled: hervido
- fried: frito
- grilled: asado a la parrilla
- roasted: rostizado
- rare: poco asado
- medium: a término medio
- well-done: bien cocido

Herbs, Condiments, and Spices
(Las Hierbas, los Condimentos y las Especias)
Use the following words to specify what seasonings you would like in your meal:

- butter: la mantequilla
- garlic: el ajo
- jam, jelly: la mermelada
- mayonnaise: la mayonesa
- mustard: la mostaza
- oil: el aceite
parsley el perejil
pepper (black) la pimienta
pepper (red) el pimiento
saffron el azafrañ
salt la sal
sugar el azúcar

Drinks (Las Bebidas)
If you would like to order a beverage, una bebida, look for something listed here:

beer la cerveza
champagne el champán
cocoa el chocolate
coffee el café
  black solo
  with milk con leche
  decaffeinated descafeinado
juice el jugo
mineral water el agua mineral
milk la leche
tea el té
wine el vino

If you want to be specific about a type of juice, use de + the name of the fruit: el jugo de naranja (orange juice).

The Spanish usually drink wine with dinner. The wines you might order include the following:

red wine el vino tinto
white wine el vino blanco
dry wine el vino seco
champagne el champán
Desserts (Los Postres)
Desserts are always a sweet ending to a delicious meal. Consider ordering one of the following:

- caramel custard  
el flan
- cookies  
las galletitas
- ice cream  
el helado
- marzipan  
el marzapán
- pie  
el pastel
- rice pudding  
el arroz con leche
- sponge cake  
el bizcocho
- yogurt  
el yogur

TABLE SETTINGS
If something is missing from your place setting or if you need something additional at the table, use the following terms to ask your server as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I need . . .</td>
<td>Necesito . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m missing . .</td>
<td>Me falta(n) . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- bowl  
un tazón
- cup  
una taza
- dinner plate  
un plato
- fork  
un tenedor
- glass  
un vaso
- knife  
un cuchillo
- menu  
un menú
- napkin  
una servilleta
- saucer  
un platillo
- teaspoon  
una cucharita
- tablespoon  
una cuchara
- wine glass  
una copa

A waiter is called el camarero and a waitress is called la camarera.
**RESTAURANT ETIQUETTE**

When reserving a table, you can use the following information:

- I would like to reserve a table . . .
- for this evening.
- for tomorrow evening.
- for Saturday evening.
- for six people at 8:00 P.M.
- on the terrace.
- Quisiera reservar una mesa . . .
- para esta noche.
- para mañana por la noche.
- para el sábado por la noche.
- para seis personas a las ocho de la noche.
- en la terraza.

To find out about the menu, you would ask:

- What is today’s specialty? ¿Cuál es el plato del día?
- What do you recommend? ¿Qué recomienda Ud.?
- What is the house specialty? ¿Cuál es la especialidad de la casa?

Good manners dictate that when your meal arrives, you wish your fellow diners *buen provecho*, a hearty appetite.

**DIETARY RESTRICTIONS**

Whether because of personal preference, or in order to follow the advice of a doctor, it is very important to be able to express any dietary restrictions you might have:

- I am on a diet. Estoy a régimen (dieta).
- I’m a vegetarian. Soy vegetariano(a).
- I can’t have anything made with . . . No puedo comer nada con . . .
- I can’t have . . . No puedo tomar . . .
- dairy products productos lácteos.
- alcohol alcohol.
- saturated fats grasas saturadas.
- shellfish mariscos.
- I’m looking for a dish (that is) . . . Estoy buscando un plato . . .
high in fiber.  
kosher.  
low in cholesterol.  
low in fat.  
low in sodium.  
non-dairy.  
salt-free.  
sugar-free.  
with . . .  
without . . .  
without artificial coloring  
without preservatives  

**PROBLEMS**

If your meal isn’t up to par, explain the problem using the phrases in this list.

- It . . .  
- is cold  
- is too rare  
- is overcooked  
- is burned  
- is too salty

At the end of the meal, to ask for the check, you would say: *La cuenta, por favor.* (The check, please.)
TIME’S UP!

1. Ask the butcher for 500 grams of meat.
2. Say that you will begin your meal with snails.
3. Name a vegetable you like.
4. Say you want your dish cooked medium.
5. Order a dessert.
6. Say you need another wine glass because yours is dirty.
7. Reserve a table for this evening for four people at 9:30 P.M. on the terrace.
8. Ask for today's specialty.
9. Explain that you can’t have any dairy products.
10. Ask for the check.
This page intentionally left blank.
Medical Needs

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Going to the pharmacy
- Using prepositional modifiers
- Expressing medical problems
- Going to the doctor
- Asking and answering “how long?”

In this chapter you’ll learn how to get the drugstore items and medical attention you need. You’ll also learn how to use body language to convey your feelings and to say how long you’ve been suffering.
AT THE PHARMACY
If you’ve accidentally left a toiletry article at home, run out of something you need, or are just feeling under the weather, you’ll probably want to take a fast trip to a local pharmacy.

Una farmacia, easily identifiable by a green cross above the door, sells prescription drugs, over-the-counter medications, and items intended for personal hygiene. When the pharmacy is closed, there may be a sign on the door indicating where a nearby all-night pharmacy, una farmacia de guardia (de turno) is located.

To ask for an over-the-counter cure, you would say: ¿Tiene Ud. algo para . . . ? (Do you have a cure for . . . ?)

To fill a prescription, tell the druggist:

Necesito esta medicina. I need this medication.
¿Podría Ud. preparar esta receta (en seguida)? Could you please fill this prescription (immediately)?

If you’re looking for a product you can purchase off the shelf, begin by telling a clerk what you’re looking for and then use the words listed below to express your needs:

Busco . . . I’m looking for . . .
Necesito . . . I need . . .
¿Tiene Ud . . . ? Do you carry . . . ?

ITEM SPANISH
aspirin la aspirina
bandages las vendas
brush un cepillo
condoms los condones
cough syrup el jarabe para la tos
deodorant el desodorante
makeup el maquillaje
mouthwash el elixir bucal
razor la maquinilla de afeitar
sanitary napkins las toallas higiénicas
scissors las tijeras
shampoo el champú
shaving cream la crema de afeitar
sleeping pills las pastillas para dormir
soap (bar) una barra de jabon
tampons los tampones
thermometer un termómetro
tissues los pañuelos de papel
toothbrush el cepillo de dientes
toothpaste la pasta dentífrica

If you’re traveling with a baby, you might need the following:
bottle un biberón
diapers (disposable) los pañales (desechables)
pacifier un chupón

PREPOSITIONAL MODIFIERS
Prepositions relate two elements of a sentence. Some of the examples below use the preposition in the Spanish version but not in the English one.

• Noun to noun: *Me corté el dedo del pie.* (I cut my toe.)
• Verb to verb: *Empieza a llorar.* (He begins to cry.)
• Verb to noun: *Ella trabaja con sus manos.* (She works with her hands.)
• Verb to pronoun: *Ella habla bien de él.* (She speaks well about him.)
• A preposition + a noun modifying another noun is equivalent to an adjective:
  
el jarabe para la tos
cough medicine
las gotas para los ojos
eye drops
las hojas de afeitar
razor blades
los pañuelos de papel
paper handkerchiefs (tissues)

• A preposition + a noun modifying a verb is equivalent to an adverb: *El doctor trabaja con cuidado.* (The doctor works carefully.)

Note the following about the use of prepositions:

• The preposition *para* or *de* + noun is used to express the use, the function, or the characteristic of an object:
el jarabe para la tos cough syrup
una bolsa de hielo ice pack
un dedo del pie toe

- The preposition *para* or *de* + verb may be used to describe the purpose of a noun:
  la loción para broncearse suntan lotion
  la maquinilla de afeitar electric razor

- The preposition *de* + noun is used to express the source, the goal, or the content of an object:
  la almohadilla de calefacción heating pad
  los pañuelos de papel tissues

**PARTS OF THE BODY**
If illness strikes while you are traveling, it is best to know the parts of the body so that you can describe exactly what ails you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BODY PART</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>BODY PART</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ankle</td>
<td>el tobillo</td>
<td>lip</td>
<td>el labio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>el brazo</td>
<td>lung</td>
<td>el pulmón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>la espalda</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>la boca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>el pecho</td>
<td>nail</td>
<td>la uña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>la oreja</td>
<td>neck</td>
<td>el cuello</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elbow</td>
<td>el codo</td>
<td>nose</td>
<td>la nariz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>el ojo</td>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>el hombro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face</td>
<td>la cara</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>la piel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>el dedo</td>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>el estómago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>el pie</td>
<td>throat</td>
<td>la garganta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>la mano</td>
<td>toe</td>
<td>el dedo del pie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>la cabeza</td>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>la lengua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>el corazón</td>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>el diente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee</td>
<td>la rodilla</td>
<td>wrist</td>
<td>la muñeca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg</td>
<td>la pierna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MEDICAL PROBLEMS
When someone is concerned about your health, you would expect to hear:

¿Qué le (te) pasa? What’s the matter with you?
¿Cómo estás? How are you?

To say that you or someone else has an ache or hurt, you could answer in one of two ways:

1. Use the verb tener (to have) to express what you have and where.
   Remember to conjugate tener and use the correct form of de: Tengo dolor de . . . (I have a . . . ache.): Tiene dolor de cabeza. (She has a headache.)
   Although Spanish speakers use tener to express what’s bothering them, English may not include the word have: Tengo dolor de oídos. (My ears hurt.)
2. Use the verb doler (to hurt) plus an indirect object to express that something hurts. Pay special attention to the following:
   • Use the appropriate indirect object pronoun to refer to those who might be in pain. Literally, you are explaining the body part is hurting (to + person). The indirect object pronouns are:
     me to me nos to us
     te to you os to you
     le to him, her les to them
   • Use the correct form of the definite article (el, la, los, las) that agrees with the body part in question. (See the list on page 238 for the names of the body parts with their corresponding definite article.) Because the indirect object pronoun is used, it would be redundant to use the possessive adjective.
   • Doler must agree in number (singular or plural) with the part that is hurting:
     singular: duele
     plural: duelen
     Me duelen los oídos. My ears hurt me.
     Le duele la espalda. His back hurts.

Should you need to explain your symptoms to the doctor, use the words in the following list. Preface your explanation with: Tengo . . . (I have (a/an) . . .)
Other expressions for health symptoms you may need to know include:

- I’m coughing a lot. Estoy tosiendo mucho.
- I’m sneezing. Estoy estornudando.
- I’m bleeding. Estoy sangrando.
- I’m nauseous. Tengo náuseas.
- I’m constipated. Estoy estreñido(a).
- I feel bad. Me siento mal.
- I have trouble sleeping. No puedo dormir.
- I’m exhausted. Estoy agotado(a).
- I hurt everywhere. Me duele todo el cuerpo.

Use the following phrase when you need a dentist: Tengo un dolor de muelas. (I’ve got a toothache.)

**AT THE DOCTOR’S**

A visit to the doctor will require that you answer these questions based on your medical history. Some common medical problems are listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allergic reaction</td>
<td>una reacción alérgica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asthma</td>
<td>el asma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>el cáncer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>un resfriado, un catarro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dizziness el vértigo
flu la gripe
heart attack un ataque al corazón
stroke un ataque de apoplejía

To answer questions about your medical history say:

I’ve had . . . He sufrido . . .
I suffer from . . . Sufro de . . .

You may also use the reflexive verb, sentirse (ie), to express how you feel:

I feel well. Me siento bien.
Do you feel very well? ¿Te sientes muy bien?
He (She, You) feel(s) better. Se siente mejor.
We feel poorly. Nos sentimos mal.
Do you feel very poorly? ¿Os sentís muy mal?
They (You) feel worse. Se sienten peor.

Asking and Answering “How Long?”
The phrases below suggest the different ways you may hear the question that asks how long you’ve had your symptoms or complaints, and the ways in which to answer correctly. The phrases vary in difficulty but all mean the same thing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>¿Desde cuándo . . .?</td>
<td>(Present tense) Desde hace . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since when + present tense . . .?</td>
<td>(Present tense) Since + time . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Desde cuándo sufre Ud.?</td>
<td>(Sufro) Desde hace una semana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since when have you been suffering?</td>
<td>(I’ve suffered) Since last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cuánto tiempo hace que . . .?</td>
<td>Hace + time + que +present tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long has (have) . . . been . . .?</td>
<td>(Present tense) For + time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cuánto tiempo hace que Ud. sufre?</td>
<td>Hace dos días (que sufro).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(How long have you been suffering?)</td>
<td>(I’ve been suffering) For two days.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To express these questions in the past, use the imperfect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>¿Desde cuándo . . . Ud.?</td>
<td>(Sufría) desde hacía . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long had . . . been . . ?</td>
<td>(Imperfect) For + time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Desde cuándo sufría Ud.?</td>
<td>(Sufría) Desde hacía un día.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long had you been suffering?</td>
<td>(I had suffered) For one day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cuánto tiempo hacía que . . .</td>
<td>Hacía + time (+ que + imperfect).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long had . . . been . . ?</td>
<td>It had been + time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¿Cuánto tiempo hacía que Ud. sufría.</td>
<td>Hacía una semana (que sufría).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long had you been suffering?</td>
<td>It had been a week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you need to pay a visit to the doctor or dentist, you might ask the concierge, el conserje, at your hotel: ¿Dónde está el consultorio del doctor (del dentista) más cercano? (Where is the nearest doctor’s [dentist’s] office?)

The doctor’s office is referred to as el consultorio, the waiting room is la sala de espera, and the nurse is el (la) enfermero(a).

Before paying the doctor’s bill, la nota or la factura, remember to ask: ¿Podría darme un recibo para mi seguro médico? (Could you please give me a receipt for my medical insurance?)

1. Ask to have a prescription filled immediately.
2. Say that you’re looking for aspirin.
3. Ask where they have tissues.
4. Say you have a headache.
5. Ask someone what’s the matter.
6. Say that your feet hurt.
7. Say that you have a toothache.
8. You have the flu. Give your symptoms.
9. Say you suffer from dizziness.
10. Tell how long you’ve been suffering.
Clothing Needs

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Selecting clothing
• Selecting sizes and getting alterations
• Expressing a problem
• Selecting colors
• Making a purchase

In this chapter you’ll learn how to describe and buy clothing in just the right size. You’ll also learn how to give your opinion about items you see, and how to use demonstrative pronouns.
While traveling you'll undoubtedly want to do some shopping, or at least some window shopping. Articles of clothing (la ropa) that you may want to purchase are listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLOTHING/ACCESSORY</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bathing suit</td>
<td>el traje de baño</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>el cinturón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouse</td>
<td>la blusa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots</td>
<td>las botas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bra</td>
<td>el sostén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>briefs</td>
<td>los calzoncillos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coat</td>
<td>el abrigo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress</td>
<td>el vestido</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>los guantes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handkerchief</td>
<td>el pañuelo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat</td>
<td>el sombrero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>la chaqueta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket (men's)</td>
<td>el saco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>los vaqueros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingerie</td>
<td>la ropa interior femenina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pajamas</td>
<td>las pijámas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panties</td>
<td>los pantaloncillos de mujer, pantaletas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pants</td>
<td>los pantalones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panty hose, tights</td>
<td>las pantimedias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pocketbook</td>
<td>la bolsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raincoat</td>
<td>el impermeable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robe</td>
<td>la bata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>la bufanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt</td>
<td>la camisa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>los zapatos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shorts</td>
<td>los pantalones cortos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
skirt  la falda
sneakers  los tenis
socks  los calcetines
sports coat  la chaqueta deportiva
stockings  las medias
suit  el traje
sweater  el suéter
tie  la corbata
T-shirt  la camiseta, la playera
underwear  la ropa interior
wallet  la cartera

If you are looking for a particular department in a store, ask for el departamento de: ¿Dónde está el departamento de ropa para hombres (mujeres)? (Where is the department for men’s [women’s] clothing?)

To tell the salesperson what you are looking for, say:

I’m looking for . . .  Busco . . .
I need . . .  Necesito . . .
I would like . . .  Quisiera . . .

SIZES
Europe and Latin America use the metric system; consequently, their clothing sizes are different from ours. The conversion chart on page 246 will help determine the sizes you wear. You will be asked your size as follows:

¿Qué talla es Ud.?  What is your size (clothing)?
¿Qué número calza Ud.?  What is your size (shoes)?

To give an appropriate answer for clothing, say:

Soy una talla . . .  I wear . . .
Mi talla es . . .  My size is . . .
pequeña  small
mediana  medium
grande  large
Or give the number of your size: *Mi talla es treinta y ocho.* (I wear size 38.) For shoes, you would say: *Mi número es . . .* (I wear shoe size . . .)

### Women's Shoes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American</th>
<th>5–5½</th>
<th>6–6½</th>
<th>7–7½</th>
<th>8–8½</th>
<th>9–9½</th>
<th>10–10½</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continental</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Women's Dresses and Suits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Men's Shoes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Men's Shirts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Men's Suits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the item you select is too small or too large, you can ask for the appropriate size as follows:

- *Quisiera una talla más grande.* I would like the next larger size.
- *Quisiera una talla más pequeña.* I would like the next smaller size.

### ALTERATIONS

There might be times when you buy something and need to have it altered, or need to repair the clothing you have. You will have to find a tailor, *un sastre* (oon sahs-treh), or a shoemaker, *un zapatero* (oon sah-pah-teh-roh), who can help you. The words listed below will help you describe the problem or the parts of the garment in need of servicing. An appropriate way to begin your conversation is: *¿Podría Ud. remendar este (esta, estos, estas) . . . por favor?* (Could you please alter [repair]) this . . .?)
If you need a dressing room to change your clothes, ask: ¿Dónde está el vestuario?

**PROBLEMS**

To explain a problem to a salesperson or a tailor, you would say:

No me gusta(n). I don’t like it (them).

No me queda(n) bien. It doesn’t (They don’t) suit (fit) me.

And then give your reasons:

El (La) es demasiado . . . It is too . . .

Los (Las) son demasiados . . . They are too . . .

Remember to add an s to the adjective when using the plural:

La camisa es demasiada holgada. The shirt is too baggy.

Los pantalones son demasiados holgados. The pants are too baggy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baggy</td>
<td>holgado(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>largo(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loose</td>
<td>holgado(a), suelto(a)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
low-cut escotado(a)
narrow estrecho(a)
short corto(a)
small pequeño(a)
tight apretado(a)
wide ancho(a)

If you’re still not satisfied, ask or say:

Do you have anything . . . ? ¿Tiene Ud. algo . . . ?
Show me something . . . Muéstreme algo . . .
more inexpensive más barato
more expensive más caro
smaller más pequeño
larger más grande
shorter más corto
longer más largo
else más

When your clothing has been adjusted to your liking, you might respond:

I like it (them). Me gusta(n).
It fits me perfectly. Me queda perfectamente.
It suits (fits) me. Me queda bien.
It’s elegant. Es elegante.
It’s nice. Es agradable.
It’s practical. Es práctico.

COLORS
To describe your color preferences, use the colors in this list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLOR</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>COLOR</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beige</td>
<td>beige</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>azul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>negro(a)</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>café</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
gray    gris     purple      morado(a)
green   verde    red         rojo(a)
navy    azul marino white blanco(a)
orange  anaranjado(a) yellow amarillo(a)
pink    rosa

To clarify a color as light, add the word *claro*. To clarify a color as dark, add the word *oscuro*.

light green   verde claro
dark blue      azul oscuro

To express your color preference, use the definite article (*el, la, los, or las*) that agrees with the noun and say:

What color do you prefer? I prefer red.
¿Qué color prefiere? Prefiero el rojo.

To express what color you would like to have a garment, use the preposition *en* before the name of the color:

What color shirt do you want? ¿En qué color prefiere Ud. la camisa?
I want it in blue. La prefiero en azul.

The definite article can be used to express “the one” as follows:

- *el (la, los, las) + adjective*: *la corbata azul* (the blue tie), *la azul* (the blue one).
- *el (la, los, las) + de*: *el suéter de lana* (the wool sweater), *el de lana* (the wool one).
- *el (la, los, las) + que*: *las camisas que compré* (the shirts I bought), *las que compré* (the ones I bought).

Remember to put the Spanish adjective in its proper place. Refer to Chapter 19:00 for a refresher course.

- a white sweater      un suéter blanco
- a red skirt          una falda roja
- white sweaters       suéteres blancos
- white skirts         faldas blancas
FABRICS
Tell your salesperson if you are interested in a certain fabric. The following list gives the materials (las telas) that are popular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cotton</td>
<td>el algodón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leather</td>
<td>el cuero, la piel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linen</td>
<td>el hilo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nylon</td>
<td>el nilón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>la seda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suede</td>
<td>la gamuza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wool</td>
<td>la lana</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the preposition *de* to express that an item of clothing is made out of a certain material: *Quisiera un vestido de seda.* (I’d like a silk dress.)

THE NEUTER *LO*
The neuter *lo* can be used with an adjective, with *que*, or with a past participle to express *what* (in the sense of *that which*) when discussing things you can buy, or in common, general situations:

- *lo* + adjective: *Compro sólo lo necesario.* (I only buy what is necessary.)
- *lo* + *que*: *Muéstreme lo que compró.* (Show me what you bought.)

PATTERNS
When selecting a garment, the pattern can make a difference in how you look. Use the phrase below with the patterns listed to select what will be best for you:

I need something . . .   Necesito algo . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATTERN</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>checked</td>
<td>de cuadros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a solid color</td>
<td>de color liso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in plaid</td>
<td>de tartán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>striped</td>
<td>con rayas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SALES
If you’re interested in purchasing something on sale, you would ask:

Are there . . . ?  ¿Hay . . . ?
discounts  ganga, rebajas
sales  saldos, ventas

MAKING A PURCHASE
Don’t forget to ask for the price:

¿Cuánto cuesta . . . ?  How much is . . .
¿Cuánto cuestan . . . ?  How much are . . .

If you want to have an item of clothing custom-made, use the verb hacer followed by an infinitive, meaning “to make (have) someone do something,” “to have something done,” “to cause to do,” or “to be done.” The construction mandar + hacer may also be used:

Ella hace tejer un suéter.  She is having a sweater knit.
Él manda hacer un traje.  He is having a suit made.

Hacer and the infinitive form a unit. All nouns follow this unit and all pronouns precede it.

Me hizo comprar este abrigo.  He made me buy this coat.
Me lo hizo comprar.  He made me buy it.

GETTING MEASURED
If you need your measurements taken, speak to the tailor, el sastre, or the dressmaker, el (la) modisto(a), and ask: ¿Podría tomarme las medidas? (Could you please take my measurements?)
TIME’S UP!

1. Tell what size pants you wear.
2. Give your shoe size.
3. Tell someone his suit is in style.
4. Ask for the children’s department.
5. Describe what you are wearing today.
6. Ask for the dressing room.
7. Ask to have your pants altered.
8. Ask the salesperson if you can see something else.
9. Ask the salesperson to show you a red and white checked shirt.
10. Ask if there are any sales today.
Taking Care of Travel Needs

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Navigating the airport
- Getting to the train station
- Traveling by car
- Dealing with problems on the road
- Dealing with an accident

In this chapter you’ll learn how to get around the airport and then around the country by train and by car. You’ll also learn how to use the passive voice.
AT THE AIRPORT

Although there are plenty of signs pointing you in various directions in an airport, it’s a good idea to become acquainted with the words that may be unfamiliar to you. The terms you need in order to get around an airport quickly and efficiently are listed below. To get your bearings, start with this expression: ¿Dónde está(n) . . . ? (Where is [are] . . . ?)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airline</td>
<td>la aerolínea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport</td>
<td>el aeropuerto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival</td>
<td>la llegada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage claim area</td>
<td>el reclamo de equipaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathrooms</td>
<td>los baños, los servicios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) cancel</td>
<td>cancelar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry-on luggage</td>
<td>el equipaje de mano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customs</td>
<td>la aduana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departure</td>
<td>la salida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destination</td>
<td>el destino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>la salida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>el vuelo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>domestic nacional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>international  internacional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate</td>
<td>la puerta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>la información</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landing</td>
<td>el aterrizaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>currency exchange</td>
<td>el cambio de dinero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passport control</td>
<td>el control de pasaportes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suitcase</td>
<td>la maleta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take-off</td>
<td>el despegue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminal</td>
<td>la terminal aerea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>el boleto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td>el viaje</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To express that you are flying standby, say: *Tengo un billete (un boleto) en lista de espera.* (I have a stand-by ticket.)

Some key questions you may want to ask include:

- Is the flight late in arriving (departing)? ¿El vuelo llega (sale) con retraso?
- Is there a delay? ¿Hay una demora?
- Where does this flight originate? ¿En dónde se origina este vuelo?
- Is the flight canceled? ¿Está anulado este vuelo?
- At what time is take-off? ¿A qué hora sale el avión?
- Are there empty seats? ¿Hay asientos libres?
- Is the flight full? ¿El vuelo está completo (lleno)?
- Are there any stopovers? Where? ¿Hace escalas? ¿Dónde?
- What cities does this airline serve? ¿A cuáles ciudades presta servicio esta línea?

You should also familiarize yourself with the words and phrases describing the inside of the plane. You can never tell when these terms will come in handy:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>el avión</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aisle</td>
<td>el pasillo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage compartment</td>
<td>el compartimento de equipaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blanket</td>
<td>la manta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crew</td>
<td>la tripulación</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life vest</td>
<td>el chaleco salvavidas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passenger</td>
<td>el pasajero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seat</td>
<td>el asiento</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seatbelt</td>
<td>el cinturón de seguridad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tray</td>
<td>la bandeja</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AT THE TRAIN STATION
The following list gives you the words you need to know for train travel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORD</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>compartment</td>
<td>el departamento</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoking</td>
<td>fumadores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonsmoking</td>
<td>no fumadores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>el andén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schedule</td>
<td>el horario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station</td>
<td>la estación</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>el billete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first class</td>
<td>de primera clase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second class</td>
<td>de segunda clase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one-way</td>
<td>de ida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round-trip</td>
<td>de ida y vuelta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TRAVEL BY CAR
Many tourists opt to see the countryside and discover out-of-the-way places by renting a car at a local car agency (*un alquiler de carros*). Use the phrases below if this is your plan:

I would like to rent a . . .

Quisiera alquilar una . . . (make of car).

I prefer automatic transmission.

Prefiero el cambio automático.

How much does it cost per day (per week) (per kilometer)?

¿Cuánto cuesta por día (por semana) (por kilómetro)?

How much is the insurance?

¿Cuánto cuesta el seguro?

Is the mileage included?

¿Está incluida el kilometraje?

Do you accept credit cards? Which ones?

¿Acepta Ud. tarjetas de crédito? ¿Cuáles?
The Car’s Exterior and Interior
Familiarize yourself with the words listed below in case you have to describe a problem with the car’s exterior.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXTERIOR PARTS</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>battery</td>
<td>la batería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas tank</td>
<td>el tanque de gasolina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headlight</td>
<td>el faro delantero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hood</td>
<td>la capota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hubcap</td>
<td>el tapacubos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>license plate</td>
<td>la placa de matrícula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor</td>
<td>el motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muffler</td>
<td>el silenciador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rearview mirror</td>
<td>el retrovisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tail light</td>
<td>el faro trasero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
<td>la goma, la llanta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transmission</td>
<td>la transmisión</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunk</td>
<td>la cajuela, el baúl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheel</td>
<td>la rueda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windshield</td>
<td>el parabrisas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windshield wiper</td>
<td>el limpiaparabrisas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Once you’ve made sure that everything on the outside is in good working order, check the car’s interior and refer to any problems you have by using the terms below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTERIOR PARTS</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accelerator</td>
<td>el acelerador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air bag</td>
<td>la bolsa de aire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brakes</td>
<td>los frenos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clutch pedal</td>
<td>el embrague</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn signal</td>
<td>la direccional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gear shift</td>
<td>el cambio de velocidades</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
glove compartment  la guantera
ignition  la ignición
steering wheel  el volante

**NOTE**

Un semáforo or una luz de tráfico refers to a traffic light and is often followed by rojo (red) or verde (green). The number of lights you have to pass is often used in giving directions: Doble a la derecha en el segundo semáforo. (Turn right at the second light.) Una carretera de peaje (de cuota) is a toll road.

**Measuring Distances**

In Europe, distance is measured in kilometers. Refer to the following list for the approximate equivalents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MILES</th>
<th>KILOMETERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Problems on the Road**

Here are some phrases you will need if you have car problems:

- Could you help me please?  ¿Podría ayudarme por favor?
- The car has broken down.  El coche se ha averiado.
- Where is the nearest gas station (garage)?  ¿Dónde está la gasolinería (el garaje) más cercano?
- . . . doesn’t (don’t) work.  . . . no funciona(n).
- Please check . . .  Inspeccione Ud. por favor . . .
- The car is overheating.  El coche se calienta.
- There’s a flat tire.  Hay una llanta ponchada.
- The battery is dead.  La batería está descargada.
There is a leak. Hay un agujero.

Can you fix it (immediately)? ¿Podría repararlo (la) en seguida?

When will it be ready? ¿Cuándo estará listo?

To get your gas tank filled with the proper gas, say: \textit{Llénelo . . .} (Fill it up . . .)

- with regular con normal
- with super con super
- with unleaded sin plomo
- with diesel con diesel

\textbf{Accidents}

Should you bear witness to or be involved in an accident (\textit{un accidente}), you may need the following verbs in order to have a conversation with a police officer (\textit{un policía}) whose English is limited. Refer to \textit{el peatón} if a pedestrian is involved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to collide</td>
<td>chocar(se)</td>
<td>to run over</td>
<td>atropellar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to drive</td>
<td>conducir, manejar</td>
<td>to signal</td>
<td>señalar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hit</td>
<td>chocar (con)</td>
<td>to skid</td>
<td>patinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hurt</td>
<td>hacer daño a</td>
<td>to turn around</td>
<td>dar una vuelta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to knock down</td>
<td>atropellar a</td>
<td>to yield</td>
<td>ceder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to park</td>
<td>estacionar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Should you need to refer to the parts of the road, use the words and expressions in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PART</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crosswalk</td>
<td>el punto de cruce</td>
<td>lane</td>
<td>el carril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance</td>
<td>la entrada</td>
<td>road surface</td>
<td>la superficie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit</td>
<td>la salida</td>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>el saliente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intersection</td>
<td>el crucero</td>
<td>traffic circle</td>
<td>la glorieta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE PASSIVE VOICE
In the active voice, the subject generally performs the action. In the passive voice, the subject is acted upon.

Active: The car knocked her down.
Passive: She was knocked down by a car.

The passive construction in Spanish resembles English: subject + form of *ser* + past participle + *por* + agent (doer) if mentioned.

The car was driven by that man. El coche fue conducido por este hombre.
The truck has been hit. La camioneta ha sido chocada.
The driver will be arrested. El conductor será arrestado.

In the passive, because the past participle is used like an adjective, it agrees in number and gender with the subject: *Las mujeres fueron atropelladas.* (The women were run over.)
The reflexive construction may substitute for the passive, because the passive is used less frequently in Spanish than in English. Note that the subject usually follows the verb:

Spanish is spoken here. Aquí se habla español.
The cars were bought. Se compraron los coches.

TIME’S UP!

1. Ask for help.
2. Ask when your flight departs.
3. Ask if your flight is cancelled.
4. Say you need a round-trip ticket.
5. Tell what car you’d like to rent.
6. Say that your car has broken down.
7. Ask for the nearest service station.
8. Ask to have your car filled with regular gas.
9. Say that two cars collided.
10. Say that a dog was hit by a car.
Managing Your Money

MASTER THESE SKILLS

- Attending to your banking needs
- Playing the stock market
- Using present and perfect participles

In this chapter you’ll learn all the terms necessary to conduct banking and stock market transactions.
AT THE BANK
There are any number of reasons to go to a bank, un banco, in a foreign country. As a tourist, you may simply want to exchange money. For those who conduct business, however, you will have deposits and withdrawals to make. And for the adventuresome few, the purchase of vacation or retirement property requires a knowledge of more sophisticated banking terms.

The following is a list of some banking expressions that should prove useful in the situations mentioned above:

What are the banking hours? ¿Cuál es el horario de trabajo?
I would like . . . Quisiera . . .
to change some money cambiar dinero
to make a deposit hacer un depósito
to make a withdrawal hacer un retiro
to take out a loan pedir un préstamo
to cash a check cobrar un cheque
to open an account abrir una cuenta
to close an account cerrar una cuenta

What is today’s exchange rate? Cuál es la tasa de cambio del dólar hoy?
What is the status of my account? ¿Cuál es el estado de mi cuenta?
Is there a financial assistant who can help me? ¿Hay un especialista financiero que pueda ayudarme (aconsejarme)?
Do you have an automated teller machine? ¿Tiene Ud. un cajero automático?
Can I take out money twenty-four hours a day? ¿Puedo retirar (sacar) dinero las veinticuatro horas del día?
What is the transaction fee?
¿Cuál es la comisión por la transacción?

I’d like to get a personal loan.
Quisiera obtener un préstamo personal.

I’d like to take out a mortgage.
Quisiera obtener una hipoteca.

What is the time period of the loan?
¿Cuál es el plazo del préstamo?

How much are the monthly payments?
¿De cuánto son las mensualidades?

What is the interest rate?
¿Cuál es la tasa (el tipo) de interés?

Is it a fixed or variable rate?
¿Es una tasa (un tipo) fija (fijo) o variable?

What are the terms of payment?
¿Cuáles son las condiciones de pago?

**Banking Terms**

If your financial needs are more specific, consult the following list for the necessary banking terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>account</td>
<td>la cuenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automated teller</td>
<td>el cajero automático</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance</td>
<td>el saldo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>el banco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill (money)</td>
<td>el billete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change (coins)</td>
<td>la moneda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>el cambio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
check | el cheque
checking account | la cuenta básica
credit | el crédito
customer | el cliente
debt | la deuda
deposit | el depósito, el ingreso
exchange rate | la tasa de cambio
interest rate | la tasa de interés
(to) invest | invertir
loan | el préstamo
payment | el pago
savings account | la cuenta de ahorros
signature | la firma
teller | el cajero
traveler’s check | el cheque de viajero
window | la ventanilla
withdrawal | el retiro

THE STOCK MARKET
The words and phrases in this list could be useful if you like to dabble in foreign markets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TERM</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>asset</td>
<td>el activo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>el negocio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capital</td>
<td>el capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dividend</td>
<td>el dividendo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fees</td>
<td>los gastos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign exchange</td>
<td>el mercado de divisas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fund</td>
<td>el fondo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>growth</td>
<td>el crecimiento</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investment</td>
<td>la inversión</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You’re in the market. You watch the ticket tape every day and often place a call to your agent. Someday you might need these useful stock phrases:

Are my stocks going up? ¿Están avanzando mis acciones?
Are my stocks going down? ¿Están bajando mis acciones?
What is the price per share? ¿Cuál es el precio por acción?
What is the commission rate? ¿Cuál es la tasa (el tipo) de comisión?
Do you have a prospectus? ¿Tiene Ud. un prospecto?
Do you know a good stockbroker? ¿Conoce Ud. a un buen agente de bolsa?
What is the status of my account? ¿Cuál es el estado de mi cuenta?
Are my investments secure? ¿Están aseguradas mis inversiones?

PRESENT PARTICIPLES
The present participle is not used in the same way in Spanish that it is in English. Refer to Chapter 22:00 for the formation of the present participle (el gerundio) in Spanish. Many English words ending in -ing are not equivalent to Spanish present participles (usually ending in -ando or -iendo):

Cashing this check is impossible. Cobrar este cheque es imposible.
I love accounting. Me gusta la contabilidad.

Present participles may be used as follows:

• With the verbs estar, seguir, continuar, and other verbs of motion to show that an action is currently taking place or continuing at the moment indicated:
We are looking for a bank. Estamos buscando un banco.

Mr. López keeps on speaking. El señor López sigue hablando.

I'll continue investing. Continuaré invertiendo.

She left, counting her money. Ella salió contando su dinero.

• To express *by* + an English present participle: *Trabajando, ahorrará mucho.* (By working, you will save a lot.)

• As a verb:

  Wanting to save money, I opened a bank account.

  Deseando ahorrar dinero, abrí una cuenta en el banco.

  You left, forgetting your bank book.

  Ud. salió, olvidando su libreta de ahorros.

**PERFECT PARTICIPLES**

The perfect participle is formed with the present participle of the appropriate helping verb and the past participle, and is used to show that one action took place before another:

Having sold his stocks, he bought himself a new car.

Habiendo vendido sus valores, se compró un coche nuevo.

Having gone to the bank early, they avoided long lines.

Habiendo ido al banco temprano, evitaron largas filas.

Note that the present participles of *estar*, *ir*, and *venir* are not used to form the present progressive tense. Instead, use the correct simple tense:

You’re being silly. Eres ridículo.

He was going to the movies. Iba al cine.

We’re coming soon. Venimos pronto.
TIME’S UP!

Try to perform the following tasks without looking back in the lesson:

1. Say that you have to go to the bank.
2. Say that you would like to cash some traveler's checks.
3. Ask if they have an automated teller machine.
4. Ask if it's open twenty-four hours.
5. Say that you’d like to buy some stocks.
6. Ask if there’s a financial assistant to help you.
7. Tell someone that one learns a lot by traveling.
8. Tell someone that you are going to the bank.
9. Say that they came in laughing.
10. Say that, having entered the bank, you went to the teller.
This page intentionally left blank.
The Language of Business

MASTER THESE SKILLS

• Fulfilling your stationery, photocopying, and faxing needs
• Fulfilling your computer needs
• Conducting business
• Using prepositions before infinitives

In this lesson you’ll learn how to manage in a business setting, using fax machines, photocopiers, and computers. You’ll also learn about verbs that need and don’t need prepositions before other verbs.
STATIONERY NEEDS
The list that follows presents the necessary stationery supplies that can be purchased en la papelería (at the stationery store). You might begin by saying: ¿Dónde puedo comprar . . . (Where can I buy . . . )

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supply</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ball-point pen</td>
<td>un bolígrafo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculator (solar)</td>
<td>una calculadora (solar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelopes</td>
<td>los sobres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notebook</td>
<td>un cuaderno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>los papeles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper clips</td>
<td>los sujetapapeles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen (fountain)</td>
<td>una pluma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>un lápiz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scotch tape</td>
<td>la cinta adhesiva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stationery</td>
<td>el papel de cartas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The file of information that is kept in a company regarding its accounts or customers is called un expediente.

PHOTOCOPIES
La fotocopiadora (copier) is an essential machine to any business. Many stationery stores also provide photocopying services, often at reasonable prices to students, travelers, and business people on the go. The phrases below will help you get the copy of the document, paper, or receipt you need:

I would like to make a photocopy of this paper (this document).
Quisiera hacer una fotocopia de este papel (este documento).

What is the cost per page?
¿Cuánto cuesta por página?

The verb mandar (conjugated) + hacer is used to express “to have something done.” Use the indirect object le or les (for him, her, or them) or the preposition para + the name of the person for whom the work is being done, or the correct prepositional pronoun:
I’m having a photocopy made for them. Yo les mando hacer una fotocopia.

I’m having a photocopy made for my boss. Yo mando hacer una fotocopia para mi jefe.

I’m having a photocopy made for him. Yo mando hacer una fotocopia para él.

**FAXES**

Being able to send a fax is a convenient service that allows for efficient, inexpensive, and rapid transmittal and receipt of important information. Therefore, fax service has become almost indispensable. The phrases below will help you with your fax needs:

- Do you have a fax machine? ¿Tiene Ud. un fax?
- What is your fax number? ¿Cuál es su número de fax?
- I’d like to send a fax. Quisiera mandar un fax.
- Fax it to me. Envíemelo por fax.
- I didn’t get your fax. No recibí su fax.
- Did you receive my fax? ¿Recibió Ud. mi fax?
- Please send it again. ¿Puede Ud. enviármelo otra vez?
- Please confirm receipt of the fax. Favor de confirmar la recepción del fax.

**COMPUTERS**

A working knowledge of computers is a must in today’s world. The phrases below will get you started if you need basic computer information from another individual.

The following computer terms are essential:

- to computerize informatizar
- computer science la informática
- computer scientist el (la) informático(a)

What kind of computer do you have? ¿Qué sistema (tipo, género) de computadora tiene Ud.?

What operating system are you using? ¿Qué sistema operador usa Ud. (está Ud. usando)?
What word processing program are you using?
¿Qué procesador de textos usa Ud. (está Ud. usando)?

Do you have . . . ?
¿Tiene Ud. . . . ?

Do you use . . . ?
¿Usa Ud. (Está Ud. usando) . . . ?

What is your e-mail address?
¿Cuál es su dirección de correo electrónico?

The list below gives you the terms and phrases you need to speak about your computer and the field of computer science.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORD</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD-ROM disk</td>
<td>el disco optinúmerico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>la unidad central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database</td>
<td>la base de datos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desktop computer</td>
<td>el ordenador, el (la) computador(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diskette</td>
<td>el disquete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-mail</td>
<td>el correo electrónico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td>el fichero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floppy disk</td>
<td>el disco flexible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hardware</td>
<td>el hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inkjet</td>
<td>(de) tinta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyboard</td>
<td>el teclado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laptop computer</td>
<td>la computadora portátil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laser</td>
<td>(de) laser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modem</td>
<td>el modem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>el ratón</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network</td>
<td>la red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operating system</td>
<td>el sistema operador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scanner</td>
<td>el scanner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
screen | la pantalla
---|---
search engine | el buscador, el navegador
software | el software

**CONDUCTING BUSINESS**
The following vocabulary is for those readers who are serious about conducting business in a Spanish-speaking country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORD</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bill</td>
<td>la factura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>los negocios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer</td>
<td>el consumidor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contract</td>
<td>el contrato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>el precio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discount</td>
<td>el descuento, la rebaja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expenditures</td>
<td>los gastos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) export</td>
<td>exportar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) import</td>
<td>importar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest rates</td>
<td>la taza de interés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>el trabajo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manager</td>
<td>el gerente</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merchandise</td>
<td>la mercancía</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office</td>
<td>la oficina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>owner</td>
<td>el propietario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partner</td>
<td>el socio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) pay</td>
<td>pagar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product</td>
<td>el producto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property</td>
<td>la propiedad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise</td>
<td>el aumento</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salary</td>
<td>el sueldo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shipment</td>
<td>el envío</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tax</td>
<td>el impuesto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use the following terms to refer to businesspeople:

- un hombre de negocios  a businessman
- una mujer de negocios  a businesswoman

**PREPOSITIONS BEFORE INFINITIVES**

In Spanish, the verb form that follows a preposition is the infinitive.

- Llega a hablar español. He succeeds in speaking Spanish.
- Se alegra de obtener un trabajo. He is glad to get a job.
- Tardan en llegar. They are delayed in arriving.
- Yo cuento con comprar esas acciones. I am counting on buying those stocks.

This next list contains some of the more common verbs requiring *a* before the infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aprender</td>
<td>learn to</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>go to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ayudar</td>
<td>help to</td>
<td>ponerse</td>
<td>begin to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comenzar</td>
<td>begin to</td>
<td>regresar</td>
<td>return to (again)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decidirse</td>
<td>decide to</td>
<td>salir</td>
<td>go out to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empezar</td>
<td>begin to</td>
<td>venir</td>
<td>come to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enseñar</td>
<td>teach to</td>
<td>volver (ue)</td>
<td>return to (again)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the more common verbs requiring *de* before the infinitive are listed here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acabar</td>
<td>have just</td>
<td>olvidarse</td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acordarse (ue)</td>
<td>remember to</td>
<td>tratar</td>
<td>try to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alegrarse</td>
<td>be glad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the more common verbs requiring *en* before the infinitive are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consentir</td>
<td>consent to</td>
<td>insistir</td>
<td>insist on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consistir</td>
<td>consist of</td>
<td>tardar</td>
<td>delay in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the more common verbs requiring *con* before the infinitive are:
The following prepositions are used before infinitives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>PREPOSITION</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>at, to</td>
<td>después de</td>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al</td>
<td>upon, on</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>in, on, of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antes de</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>en vez de</td>
<td>instead of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>hasta</td>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>of, to, from</td>
<td>sin</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Él descansa en lugar de trabajar. He rests instead of working.

Ella telefonea antes de enviar un fax. She phones before sending a fax.

A verb + preposition + infinitive must have the same subject. If there are different subjects, *que* is used and a conjugated verb form (often in the subjunctive) is used instead of the infinitive:

I insist on working. I insist that you work.
Insisto en trabajar. Insisto en que Ud. trabaje.

I’m leaving after eating. I’m going after you eat.
Me voy después de comer. Me voy después de que Ud. coma.

The verbs below are used without a preposition before the infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deber</td>
<td>must, have to</td>
<td>pensar</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dejar</td>
<td>allow</td>
<td>poder</td>
<td>be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esperar</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>preferir (ie)</td>
<td>prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hacer</td>
<td>make, have</td>
<td>querer, desear</td>
<td>want, wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>something done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necesitar</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>saber</td>
<td>know (how)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oír</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>ver</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

El jefe los deja salir. The boss allows them to leave.

Ella debe comprar una computadora. She must buy a computer.
TIME’S UP!

Try not to look back at the tables, and fill in a preposition, if needed:

1. Lo ayudo ___ completar su trabajo.
2. Queremos ___ hacer negocios.
4. Insisto ___ recibir un descuento.
5. Ellos sueñan ___ viajar.
6. Él aprende ___ hablar español.
7. Trato ___ resolver el problema.
8. Ellos cuentan ___ ganar mucho dinero.
9. ¿Sabes ___ utilizar una computadora?
10. Ella sale ___ comprar disquetes.
Here's your final opportunity to see if you've mastered enough Spanish to get by on your own. Imagine you are in a Spanish-speaking country and give an appropriate response to each situation.
1. You are at a party and strike up a conversation with an interesting person. What information do you give about yourself?

2. You are talking to someone who is speaking too fast. What might you say?

3. You call a friend on the phone. Someone else answers. How do you respond?

4. You want to invite a friend to go to a museum with you. What suggestions would you make?

5. You are lost in the streets of Spain. You stop a passerby and ask for directions. What might you ask?

6. You don’t like your hotel room. Tell this to the concierge and express why.

7. You are in a gift shop looking for a gift for a friend. Ask a salesperson for help.
8. You realize you have lost your passport. What do you say to the police officer?

9. Tell a friend about your favorite leisure activity and why you like it.

10. You are interviewing for a job in a Spanish firm. What do you tell the head of personnel about yourself?

11. You are in a park in Mexico. Convince some acquaintances to engage in a sport.

12. You are in a clothing store. Tell the salesperson what you are looking for.

13. You are going to the movies with a friend. You want to see a spy movie but your friend wants to see a comedy. Convince your friend to see the spy movie.

14. You are at the airport and have learned that your flight is delayed. What do you say to the airline clerk?
15. You want to change your money into the currency of the country you are visiting. What do you say to the bank teller?

16. A customs officer at the airport asks what you have purchased on your trip. How do you respond?

17. You are having dinner in a restaurant. Tell the waiter what you want.

18. A friend has invited you to a bullfight. Express your feelings about going.

19. You want to make a dinner reservation at a fine restaurant. What do you say to the person answering the phone?

20. You rented a car and are having problems with it. What do you say to the rental agent?

21. You want to go to a concert. What information do you ask for on the phone?
22. You have an appointment in town. When you realize you will be late, you phone your acquaintance. What do you say?

__________________________________________________________________________

23. You don’t feel well. What do you tell the doctor?

__________________________________________________________________________

24. Your friend has a cousin for you to meet. What questions do you ask about this person?

__________________________________________________________________________
This page intentionally left blank.
Answer Key

Since there is almost always more than one way to say something, the statements and questions given as responses are just suggestions.
24:00

1. boo-weh-nohs dee-yahs meh yah-moh hoh-seh seel-bah
2. ah-bloh ehs-pah-nyohl (oon poh-koh)
3. pehr-doh-neh-meh yoh noh kohm-prehn-doh ah-bleh mahs
dehs-pah-see-yoh pohr fah-bohr
4. keh dee-hoh rreh-pee-tah loh pohr fah-bohr
5. kee-see-yeh-rah kam-bee-yahr mees doh-lah-rehs ehn
eh-yoo-rohs pohr fah-bohr
6. pehr-doh-neh-meh dohn-deh ehs-tah lah ehm-bah-hah-dah
ah-meh-ree-kah-nah
7. noh meh see-yehn-toh bee-yehn dohn-deh ehs-tah lah
oh-fee-see-nah dehl meh-dee-koh lah mahs sehr-kah-nah
8. poh-dree-yahs ah-yoo-dahr-meh pohr fah-bohr pehr-dee oon
doh-koo-mehn-toh eem-pohr-tahn-teh
9. kwahn-toh kwehs-tahn ehs-tohs pahn-tah-loh-nehs neh-grohs
ee ehs-tahs kah-mee-sahs rroh-hahs
10. neh-seh-see-toh oo-nah koo-chah-rah oon teh-neh-dohr ee oon
koo-chee-yoh grah-see-yahs

23:00

Part I
1. el banco
2. ese plato
3. esta catedral
4. la flor
5. aquel hombre

Part II
6. un amigo
7. este francés
8. el actor
9. este policía
10. aquel profesor
22:00

1. estoy
2. soy
3. tengo
4. quiero
5. puedo
6. busco
7. mido
8. sustituyo
9. viene
10. vamos

21:00

1. tenía
2. iba
3. era
4. prestaba
5. jugaba
6. pidió
7. quería
8. estaba
9. fuimos
10. conocí

20:00

Part I
1. seré
2. querré
3. tendré
4. viviré
5. conduciré

Part II
6. pondría
7. daría
8. haría
9. compraría
10. diría
19:00

1. Él piensa profundamente.
2. La señora López es una mujer alegre.
3. Es un buen hombre.
4. Hablan frecuentemente.
5. Ella compra demasiados vestidos.
7. Es la primera vez.
8. Ellos trabajan fácilmente.
10. Ellos escriben rápidamente.

18:00

3. Me llamo John Smith.
4. Estoy bien, gracias.
5. Soy de los Estados Unidos.
7. Soy americano.
8. Voy a España.
9. Le presento a mi esposa, Marta.
10. Adiós. Hasta luego.

17:00

1. ¿Quiere ir al restaurante conmigo?
2. ¿Puedes ir al circo con mi familia y yo?
3. Deseo ir al club.
4. ¡Por supuesto! Quiero ir a la catedral.
5. Lo siento mucho. No puedo ir a la feria. Estoy muy cansado(a).
7. No puedo ir al zoológico porque estoy muy ocupado(a).
8. No puedo ir al jardín porque no estoy libre.
10. ¿Ir a la fuente? Lo que prefieras.
16:00

1. Tengo veinte años.
2. ¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?
3. Mi cumpleaños es el once de julio de mil novecientos cuarenta y siete.
4. ¿Qué días está cerrado el museo?
5. Estamos en el verano.
6. Hoy es el diez de agosto.
7. ¿Cuándo quieres salir?
8. Son las dos y media.
9. ¿A qué hora nos vemos?
10. La película empieza a las ocho y cuarto.

15:00

1. Estoy mirando solamente.
2. Quisiera comprar un coche para mi familia.
3. Ud. tiene que escuchar.
4. Ud. debe ir a la panadería.
5. Debería hacer las camas.
6. Ud. me debe cinco dólares.
7. Es necesario ir de compras.
8. Quiero que saque la basura.
9. Quiero ir a la librería.
10. ¡No vacile! Tiene que lavar el coche.

14:00

1. ¿Por qué no vamos al restaurante?
2. ¿Tiene(s) ganas de ir al cine?
3. ¿Quieres ir de compras?
5. Continúe caminando tres cuadras.
6. No vaya todo derecho.
7. ¡Despiértate temprano!
10. Ir al teatro es aburrido.
13:00

1. ¿Cuál es su nombre?/¿Cómo se llama Ud.?
2. ¿Cuál es su dirección?
3. ¿Cuál es su número de teléfono?
4. ¿De dónde es?
5. ¿Cuántos años tiene?
6. ¿Hay un restaurante por aquí?
7. ¿Cuál de las películas prefiere Ud.?
8. ¿Cuál es su profesión?
9. ¿Cuánto cuesta el periódico?
10. Lo siento pero no comprendo.

12:00

1. Sí, quiero ir al cine esta noche.
2. No, no tengo ganas de comer en un restaurante.
3. No, no fumo.
4. Me llamo Juan.
5. Vivo en Pittsburgh.
6. Mi número de teléfono es cinco, cinco, cinco, nueve, dos, uno, tres.
7. Tengo treinta años.
8. Cuesta dos mil quinientos dólares.
9. Prefiero (name two movies).

11:00

1. ¿Puede Ud. ayudarme, por favor?
2. ¿A qué hora abre Ud.?
3. ¿Puede darme un recibo?
4. ¿Cuánto cuesta un sello para una carta por correo aéreo?
5. ¿Puede Ud. darme un corte de pelo?
6. ¿Puede Ud. lavar en seco mi traje?
7. ¿Puede Ud. darme otra lentilla de contacto?
8. Necesito una película de treinta y seis exposiciones.
9. ¿Puede Ud. arreglar mi reloj?
10. ¿Dónde está la comisaría de policía más cercana?
10:00

1. ¿Te parece ir a la playa?
2. ¿Qué hay en la televisión?
3. ¿Qué tipo de película están pasando?
4. Quisiera ver una comedia.
5. ¿Le gustaría ir conmigo al campo hacer una gira campestre?
6. Te quiero.
7. A mí me gustan los regalos.
8. Me falta una pluma.
9. Muéstremelo, por favor.
10. Me encanta mucho esta obra de teatro.

09:00

1. Vamos a nadar.
2. ¿Juega Ud. al golf?
3. ¿Quiere Ud. jugar al tenis conmigo?
4. Me faltan patines.
5. ¿Podrías prestarme una bicicleta?
6. ¿Qué tiempo hace hoy?
   Hay una temperatura de ochenta grados.
8. No me gusta jugar al tenis porque es demasiado difícil.
9. Dudo que mi amigo juegue al baloncesto.
10. Estoy seguro que va a hacer buen tiempo.

08:00

1. Un perro es más grande que un gato.
2. El español es más fácil que las matemáticas.
3. Mi hermana es menos grande que mi hermano.
4. Cristina es la más bonita de mis amigas.
5. Mi esposo corre menos rápidamente que mi hijo.
6. Julio trabaja lo más diligentemente.
7. Tengo más trabajo que Ud.
8. Mi madre es tan alta como yo.
9. Tengo tanta paciencia como mi amiga.
10. Pienso que este libro es el mejor que pueda comprar.
07:00

1. ¿Hay un garaje?
2. Quisiera una habitación con vista al mar.
3. Necesito otra almohada.
4. ¡Qué habitación tan magnífica!
5. ¡Que entren!
6. Me quedaré en este hotel con tal de que tenga una cancha de tenis.
7. Busco un hotel que sea lujoso.
8. Hay alguien que hable inglés.
9. Esa es la habitación que quiero.
10. Tengo todo lo que necesito.

06:00

1. Necesito quinientos gramos de carne, por favor.
2. Para empezar, quiero caracoles.
3. Me gustan las zanahorias.
4. Quiero mi rosbif a término medio.
5. Quisiera un flan, por favor.
7. Quisiera reservar una mesa en la terraza para esta noche a las nueve y media para cuatro personas.
8. ¿Cuál es el plato del día?
9. No puedo tomar productos lácteos.
10. La cuenta, por favor.

05:00

1. ¿Podría Ud. preparar esta receta en seguida?
2. Busco aspirinas.
3. ¿Dónde hay pañuelos de papel?
4. Tengo un dolor de cabeza.
5. ¿Qué le pasa?
6. Me duelen los pies.
7. Tengo un dolor de muelas.
   No puedo dormir. Me duele todo el cuerpo.
10. Hace dos semanas que yo sufre.
04:00

1. Llevo la talla treinta y dos.
2. Mi número es siete y medio.
3. Su traje está de moda.
4. ¿Dónde está el departamento de niños?
5. Llevo pantalones negros y una camisa azul.
6. ¿Dónde está el vestuario?
7. ¿Podría remendar mis pantalones, por favor?
8. ¿Puedo ver algo más?
9. Muéstrame por favor una camisa de cuadros rojas y blancas.
10. ¿Hay gangas hoy?

03:00

1. ¿Puede Ud. ayudarme, por favor?
2. ¿Cuándo sale mi vuelo?
3. ¿Está anulado este vuelo?
4. Necesito un billete de ida y vuelta.
5. Quisiera alquilar un Honda.
6. Mi coche se ha averiado.
7. ¿Dónde está el garaje más cercano?
8. Llénelo con normal.
9. Dos coches se chocaron.
10. Un perro fue chocado por un coche.

02:00

1. Tengo que ir al banco.
2. Quisiera cobrar algunos cheques de viajero.
3. ¿Tiene Ud. un cajero automático?
4. ¿Está abierto las veinticuatro horas al día?
5. Quisiera comprar algunos valores.
6. Hay un especialista financiero que pueda ayudarme?
7. Se aprende mucho viajando.
10. Habiendo entrado en el banco, fui al cajero.

Por favor, hable Ud. más despacio. No comprendo nada.

Diga. Habla Ramón. ¿Está Isabel? ¿Puedo hablar con ella?

¿No quieres ir conmigo al museo de arte moderno? Hay una exposición magnífica de las obras de Picasso.

Quiero ir a mi hotel y estoy perdido. ¿Sabe Ud. dónde está la Avenida Quince?

No me gusta mi habitación porque no hay vista al mar. ¿Podría Ud. cambiarla?

Busco un regalo para mi amigo(a). Puede Ud. recomendar algo. A él (ella) le gustan mucho los deportes.

¿Puede Ud. ayudarme? He perdido mi pasaporte. ¿Dónde está el consulado americano?

Me gusta mucho jugar al tenis. Es un deporte muy divertido porque siempre juego con mis amigos.

Soy una persona muy diligente y trabajadora. Siempre llego temprano a la oficina y hago todo lo necesario.

¿Por qué no jugamos al fútbol? Hace buen tiempo y tenemos bastante jugadores. Vamos a divertirnos mucho.

Busco pantalones negros en lana. Mi talla es cuarenta y seis. También busco una camisa azul de talla mediana con rayas blancas verticales en algodón.

No me gustan las comedias. Pienso que son ridículas. ¿Por qué no vamos a ver una película de espía que será mucho más divertida?
14. Tengo una cita muy importante. ¿Por qué hay un retraso? ¿Cuándo va a despegar el avión?
15. Quiero cambiar doscientos dólares americanos en euros. ¿Cuál es la tasa (el tipo) de cambio del dólar hoy?
16. Compré un reloj de plata, dos botellas de ron, y juguetes para mis niños.
17. Para empezar quiero gazpacho. Entonces quiero paella de mariscos y una ensalada. Voy a tomar vino blanco con mi comida.
18. No me gustaría ir a una corrida de toros. Pienso que es demasiado violenta.
19. Quisiera reservar una mesa para cuatro personas para esta noche a las ocho y media.
20. Tengo un problema con el coche que alquilé. Los frenos no funcionan bien y tengo miedo de conducir el coche.
21. Diga. Necesito información acerca del concierto de esta noche. ¿A qué hora empieza y cuánto cuestan los billetes?
22. Lo siento mucho. Voy a llegar tarde porque tengo una goma pinchada y tengo que repararla. Llegaré en una media hora.
23. Me siento mal. Tengo un dolor de estómago y no tengo ganas de comer. También tengo fiebre. ¿Puede Ud. ayudarme?
24. ¿Cuántos años tiene su primo(a)? ¿De dónde es? ¿Cómo es? ¿Cuál es su profesión?
Appendix A

24 Important Words and Phrases
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
<th>PRONUNCIATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Hello.</td>
<td>Buenos días.</td>
<td>boo-weh-nohs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deh-yahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Good-bye.</td>
<td>Adiós.</td>
<td>ah dee-yohs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Please.</td>
<td>Por favor.</td>
<td>pohr fah-bohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Thank you very much.</td>
<td>Muchas gracias.</td>
<td>moo-chahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>grah-see-yahs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. You’re welcome.</td>
<td>De nada.</td>
<td>deh nah-dah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Excuse me.</td>
<td>Perdón.</td>
<td>pehr-dohn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Con permiso.</td>
<td>kohn pehr-mee-soh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. My name is . . .</td>
<td>Me llamo . . .</td>
<td>meh yah-moh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I would like . . .</td>
<td>Quisiera . . .</td>
<td>kee-see-yeh-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I need . . .</td>
<td>Necesito . . .</td>
<td>neh-seh-see-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Do you have . . .</td>
<td>¿Tiene Ud . . . ?</td>
<td>tee-yeh-neh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>oo-stehd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. How do you say . .</td>
<td>¿Cómo se dice . . ?</td>
<td>koh-moh seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dee-seh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Please give me . .</td>
<td>Déme por favor . . .</td>
<td>deh-meh pohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fah-bohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. What does this mean?</td>
<td>¿Qué quiere decir esto?</td>
<td>keh kee-yeh-rah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deh-see ehs-toh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Can you help me please?</td>
<td>¿Puede Ud. ayudarme por favor?</td>
<td>poo-weh-deh oo-steh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ah-yoo-dahr-meh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pohr fah-bohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Do you speak English?</td>
<td>¿Habla Ud. inglés?</td>
<td>ah-blah oo-stehd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>een-glehs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. I speak a little Spanish.</td>
<td>Hablo un poco el español.</td>
<td>ah-bloh oon poh-koh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ehl ehs-pah-nyohl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. I don’t understand</td>
<td>No comprendo.</td>
<td>noh kohm-prehn-doh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Please repeat.</td>
<td>Repita por favor.</td>
<td>rreh-pee-tah pohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fah-bohr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. What did you say?</td>
<td>¿Qué dijo Ud.?</td>
<td>kee dee-hoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>oo-stehd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. I’m lost.</td>
<td>Estoy perdido(a).</td>
<td>ehs-toy pehr-dee-doh (dah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. I’m looking for . . .</td>
<td>Estoy buscando . . .</td>
<td>ehs-toy boos-kahn-doh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Where are the bathrooms?</td>
<td>¿Dónde está los baños?</td>
<td>dohn-deh ehs-tah lohs bah-nyohs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Where is the police station?</td>
<td>¿Dónde está la comisaria de de policía?</td>
<td>dohn-deh ehs-tah lah koh-mee-sah-reh-yeh deh poh-lee-see-yah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Where is the American Embassy?</td>
<td>¿Dónde está la embajada americana?</td>
<td>dohn-deh ehs-tah lah ehm- bah-hah-dah ah-meh-ree kah-nah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page intentionally left blank.
Appendix B

Verb Glossary
CONJUGATING REGULAR VERBS

-ar Verbs

*Usar*, to use
Gerund: usando Past participle: usado Commands: ¡Use Ud.! ¡Usen Uds.! ¡Usemos!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(do)</td>
<td>(did)</td>
<td>(was)</td>
<td>(will)</td>
<td>(would)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uso</td>
<td>usé</td>
<td>usaba</td>
<td>usaré</td>
<td>usaría</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usas</td>
<td>usaste</td>
<td>usabas</td>
<td>usarás</td>
<td>usarías</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usa</td>
<td>usó</td>
<td>usaba</td>
<td>usará</td>
<td>usaría</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usamos</td>
<td>usamos</td>
<td>usábamos</td>
<td>usaremos</td>
<td>usaríamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usáis</td>
<td>usasteis</td>
<td>usábaís</td>
<td>usaréis</td>
<td>usaríais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usan</td>
<td>usaron</td>
<td>usaban</td>
<td>usarán</td>
<td>usarían</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-er Verbs

*Comer*, to eat
Gerund: comiendo Past participle: comido Commands: ¡Coma Ud.! ¡Coman Uds.! ¡Comamos!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>como</td>
<td>comí</td>
<td>comía</td>
<td>comeré</td>
<td>comería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes</td>
<td>comiste</td>
<td>comías</td>
<td>comerás</td>
<td>comerías</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>comió</td>
<td>comía</td>
<td>comerá</td>
<td>comería</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comemos</td>
<td>comimos</td>
<td>comíamos</td>
<td>comeremos</td>
<td>comeríamos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coméis</td>
<td>comisteis</td>
<td>comíais</td>
<td>comeréis</td>
<td>comeríais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comen</td>
<td>comieron</td>
<td>comían</td>
<td>comerán</td>
<td>comerían</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-ir Verbs

*Vivir*, to live
Gerund: viviendo Past participle: vivido Commands: ¡Viva Ud.! ¡Vivan Uds.! ¡Vivamos!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Preterit</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Conditional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vivo</td>
<td>viví</td>
<td>vivía</td>
<td>viviré</td>
<td>viviría</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vives</td>
<td>viviste</td>
<td>vivías</td>
<td>vivirás</td>
<td>vivirías</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONJUGATING STEM-CHANGING VERBS

-ar Verbs

_Pensar_ (e to ie), to think
Present: pienso, piensas, piensa, pensamos, pensáis, piensan

Other verbs like _pensar_ include _cerrar_ (to close), _comenzar_ (to begin), and _empezar_ (to begin).

_Mostrar_ (o to ue), to show
Present: muestro, muestras, muestra, mostramos, mostráis, muestran

Other verbs like _mostrar_ include _almorzar_ (to eat lunch), _contar_ (to tell), _costar_ (to cost), _encontrar_ (to find), and _recordar_ (to remember).

_Jugar_ (u to ue), to play (a sport or game)
Present: juego, juegas, juega, jugamos, jugáis, juegan
Preterit: jugué, jugaste, jugó, jugamos, jugasteis, jugaron

-er Verbs

_Defender_ (e to ie), to defend, to forbid
Present: defiendo, defiendes, defiende, defendemos, defendéis, defienden

Other verbs like _defender_ include _descender_ (to descend), _entender_ (to understand, to hear), _perder_ (to lose), and _querer_ (to want).

_Volver_ (o to ue), to return
Present: vuelvo, vueltas, vuelve, volvemos, volvéis, vuelven

Another verb like _volver_ is _poder_ (to be able to, can).

-ir Verbs

_Pedir_ (e to i), to ask for
Gerund: pidiendo
Present: pido, pides, pide, pedimos, pedís, piden
Preterit: pedí, pediste, pidió, pedimos, pedisteis, pidieron

Other verbs like _pedir_ include _impedir_ (to prevent), _medir_ (to measure), _repetir_ (to repeat), and _servir_ (to serve).
Sentir (e to ie, i), to feel
Gerund: sintiendo
Present: siento, sientes, siente, sentimos, sentís, sienten
Preterit: sentí, sentiste, sintió, sentimos, sentisteis, sintieron

Other verbs like sentir include advertir (to warn, to notify), consentir (to consent), mentir (to lie), preferir (to prefer), and referir (to refer).

Dormir (o to ue, u), to sleep
Gerund: durmiendo
Present: duermo, duermes, duerme, dormimos, dormís, duermen
Preterit: dormí, dormiste, dormió, dormimos, dormisteis, durmieron

Another verb like dormir is morir (to die).

-uir Verbs (except -guir)

Incluir (i to y), to include
Gerund: incluyendo
Present: incluyo, incluyes, incluye, incluimos, incluí, incluyen
Preterit: incluí, incluiste, incluyó, incluimos, incluisteis, incluyeron

Other verbs like incluir include concluir (to conclude, to end), construir (to construct), contribuir (to contribute), destruir (to destroy), and sustituir (to substitute).

-eer Verbs

Leer (e to y), to read
Gerund: leyendo
Preterit: leí, leíste, leyó, leímos, leísteis, leyeron

Other verbs like leer include creer (to believe), poseer (to possess), and proveer (to provide).

-iar Verbs

Enviar (i to í), to send
Present: envío, envías, envía, enviamos, enviáis, envían

Other verbs like enviar include confiar + en (to confide in), guiar (to guide), and variar (to vary).
-uar Verbs

Actuar (u to ú), to act
Present: actúo, actúas, actúa, actuamos, actuáis, actúan

Another verb like actuar is continuar (to continue).

CONJUGATING SPELLING-CHANGE VERBS

-cer or -cir Verbs

Convencer (c to z), to convince
Present: convenzon, convences, convence, convencemos, convencéis, convencen

Conocer (c to ze), to know
Present: conozco, conoces, conoce, conocemos, conocéis, conocen

Conducir (c to ze), to drive, conduct
Present: conduzco, conduces, conduce, conducemos, conducéis, conducen
Preterit: conduje, condujiste, condujo, condujimos, condujisteis, condujieron

-ger or -gir Verbs

Exigir (g to j), to demand
Present: exijo, exiges, exige, exigimos, exigís, exigen

Escoger (g to j), to choose
Present: escojo, escoges, escoge, escogemos, escogéis, escogen

-guir Verbs

Distinguir (gu to g), to distinguish
Present: distingo, distingues, distingue, distinguimos, distinguís, distinguen

-car Verbs

Buscar (c to qu), to look for
Preterit: busqué, buscaste, buscó, buscamos, buscasteis, buscaron

-gar Verbs

Pagar (g to gu), to pay
Preterit: pagué, pagaste, pagó, pagamos, pagasteis, pagaron
-zar Verbs

Gozar (z to c), to enjoy
Preterit: gocé, gozaste, gozó, gozamos, gozasteis, gozaron

CONJUGATING IRREGULAR VERBS

Dar, to give
Present: doy, das, da, damos, dáis, dan
Preterit: di, diste, dio, dimos, disteis, dieron

Decir, to say
Gerund: diciendo Past participle: dicho
Present: digo dices dice decimos decís dicen
Preterit: dije dijiste dijo dijimos dijisteis dijeron
Future: diré dirás dirá diremos diréis dirán
Conditional: diría dirías diría diríamos diríais dirían

Estar, to be
Present: estoy, estás, está, estamos, estáis, están
Preterit: estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron

Hacer, to make, to do
Past participle: hecho
Present: hago, haces, hace, hacemos, hacéis, hacen
Preterit: hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron
Future: haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán
Conditional: haría, harías, haría, haríamos, haríais, harían

Ir, to go
Gerund: yendo
Present: voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van
Preterit: fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron
Conditional: iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban

Oír, to hear
Gerund: oyendo
Present: oigo, oyes,oye, oímos, oís, oyen
Preterit: oí, oíste, oyó, oímos, oísteis, oyeron

Poder (o to ue), to be able to, can
Gerund: pudiendo
Present: puedo, puedes, puede, podemos, podéis, pueden
Preterit: pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron
Future: podrá, podrás, pudo, podremos, podréis, podrán
Conditional: podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podríais, podrían

304
**Poner**, to put
Past participle: puesto
Present: pongo, pones, pone, ponemos, ponéis, ponen
Preterit: puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron
Future: pondré, pondrás, pondrá, pondremos, pondréis, pondrán
Conditional: pondría, pondrías, pondría, pondríamos, pondríais, pondrían

**Querer**, to want
Present: quiero, quieres, quiere, queremos, queréis, quieren
Preterit: quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisisteis, quisieron
Future: querré, querrás, querrá, querremos, querréis, querrán
Conditional: querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querríais, querrían

**Saber**, to know
Present: sé, sabes, sabe, sabemos, sabéis, saben
Preterit: supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron
Future: sabré, sabrás, sabrá, sabremos, sabréis, sabrán
Conditional: sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabríais, sabrían

**Salir**, to go out, to leave
Present: salgo, sales, sale, salimos, saléis, salen
Future: saldré, saldrás, saldrá, saldremos, saldréis, saldrán
Conditional: saldría, saldrías, saldría, saldríamos, saldríais, saldrían

**Ser**, to be
Past participle: sido
Present: soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son
Preterit: fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron
Imperfect: era, eras, fue, éramos, eraís, eran

**Tener**, to have
Present: tengo, tienes, tiene, tenemos, tenéis, tienen
Preterit: tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron
Future: tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendréis, tendrán
Conditional: tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendríais, tendrían

**Traer**, to bring
Past participle: traído
Present: traigo, traes, traer, traemos, traéis, traen
Preterit: traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron
Venir, to come
Gerund: viniendo
Present: vengo, vienes, viene, venimos, venís, vienen
Preterit: vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron
Future: vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendréis, vendrán
Conditional: vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendríais, vendrían

Ver, to see
Past participle: visto
Present: veo, ves, ve, vemos, veis, ven
Preterit: vi, viste, vio, vimos, visteis, vieron
Imperfect: veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían
Index

A
A, á (vowel), pronunciation of, 3
A (to, for), 98
with indirect object pronouns, 179–80
before infinitives, 274
personal, 179
in questions and answers, 159–60
A él/éllos, 183
A ella/ellas, 183
A la/las, 115–16
A Ud./Uds., 183
Abbreviations
   for ordinal numbers, 111
   for usted and ustedes, 28
Abierto, 114
Abrir (to open)
   conditional mood of, 63
   conjugation of, 33–34
   future tense of, 61
Absolute superlative, 207–8
Accent marks, 2–3
   acute, 2–3
   for attaching pronouns to infinitives, 183
   for demonstrative pronouns, 176
diaeresis, 3
   for stress, 3
tilde, 3
when changing masculine nouns to feminine, 20
when making nouns plural, 21
Acceptance, expressing, 103
Accidents, traffic, 259
Accounts files, 270
Acquaintances
   making, 82–93
   questioning new, 150–51
Active voice, 260
Activities
   leisure, 174–75
   outdoor, 188–89
Actuar (to act), 38
Acute accent, 2–3
Adjectives
   adverbs vs., 77–78
   antonyms of, 202–3
   comparison of, 200–203
demonstrative, 16, 71, 176
descriptive, 71
different meanings of, 74
   forming feminine of, 68–70
   forming plural of, 70–71
Adjectives, continued
interrogative, 145–46
of nationality, 70
near perfect cognates of, 23
as noun markers, 12, 16
perfect cognates of, 22
position of, 71–74, 249
possessive, 71, 91–93
of quality, 71
of quantity, 72, 73, 222
relative, 220
ser and estar with, 74–76
shortened forms of, 72–74
¿Adónde?, answering questions with, 161
Adverbial phrases, 77, 99
Adverbs, 77–80
adjectives vs., 77–78
comparison of, 203–5
with demonstrative adjectives, 16
forming, 77
interrogative, 146–47, 160
position of, 80
of quantity, 222
showing location, 16
Affirmative answers, 154
Affirmative commands, 135–36
accents for, 183
object pronouns with, 182
reflexive pronouns with, 139
Age, expressing, 110
Agradecer (to thank), 39
Airports, 254–55
Alterations, clothing, 246–47
Amás, 155
Animals
in hotels and restaurants, 212
names of, 198
Answering questions, 154–64. See also Questions
affirmatively, 154
"How long?", 241–42
for information, 158–62
with interrogative adverbs, 160
negatively, 154–58
pero vs. sino in, 158
on the phone, 162–64
prepositions in, 162
Antecedents, 217, 219
Anticipation, subjunctive after conjunc-
tions for, 214
Antonyms, 202–3
Appetizers, 224
Appliances, 120
Aquel (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Aquella (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Aquellas (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Aquellos (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
-ar verbs
conditional mood of, 63
conjugation of, 29–32
future tense of, 60–61
gerunds from, 44
imperfect of, 53–54
past participles of, 52–53
preterit of, 48
regular, 300
shoe verbs, 35–36
stem-changing, 126, 301
subjunctive of, 125
Articles
definite, 12–15, 87–88, 92, 177, 249
indefinite, 12, 15
as noun markers, 12–15
Asking questions. See Questions
Assistance. See Help, seeking
Attractions, 174–75
Automobiles. See Cars

B
Babies, supplies for, 237
Banking, 262–64
Bars, 224
Basement, term for, 110
Bathroom facilities, 213
Beverages, 229
Body. See Parts of the body
Buscar (to look for), 100
Business needs, 270–74. See also Money
computers, 271–73
faxes, 271
photocopies, 270–71
stationery, 270
INDEX

C
C (consonant), pronunciation of, 6
Caer (to fall), 39
Cafés, 224
Calendars, 111
Camera shop, seeking help at, 169–70
-car verbs
preterit of, 49
spelling changes with, 303
Cardinal numbers, 108–10
for days, 113
for ordinals after ten, 110
Cars, 256–59
accidents with, 259
exterior and interior of, 257–58
and measuring distances, 258
problems with, 258–59
renting, 256
Centigrade, converting Fahrenheit and, 190
-cer verbs, spelling changes with, 38, 303
Cerrado, 114
Certainty, expressions of, 192–94
Ch (consonant), pronunciation of, 5
Chores, 121
Cien, 73
Ciento, 73, 109
-cir verbs, spelling changes with, 38, 303
Classroom expressions, 198–99
Clothing, 244–51
alterations of, 246–47
articles of, 244–45
color preferences for, 248–49
definite article with, 92
dry cleaning services for, 168
fabrics for, 250
getting measured for, 251
patterns of, 250
problems with, 247–48
purchasing, 251
repairs of, 168
sales on, 251
sizes of, 245–46
Cognates, 22–25
false friends vs., 24
near perfect, 23–24
perfect, 22–23
Colors, 248–49
Commands, 134–39
affirmative, 135–36, 183
familiar, 135–36
irregular, 136–39
negative, 135–36
polite, 134–35
with reflexive verbs, 139
third person, 214
Commas (in numbers), 108
Communication, lack of, 151–52
¿Cómo? (how), answering questions with, 160
Comparatives, 199, 200
of adjectives, 200–203
of adverbs, 203–5
expressions of, 208
of nouns, 205–6
Comparison(s)
of adjectives, 200–203
of adverbs, 203–5
of equality, 206–7
of inequality, 199–206
of nouns, 205–6
of verbs, 206
Complaints, 142
Compound tenses, reflexive verbs in, 86–87
Compounds
of ciento, 109
of irregular verbs, 62
of verbs in preterit, 51
Computers, 271–73
Con (with), 274–75
Con permiso, 152
Con + noun, 77
Concession, conjunctions expressing, 215
Condiments, 228–29
Conditional mood, 63–64, 194
Condition(s)
conjunctions expressing, 215
contrary-to-fact, 194
physical, 149
Conducir (to drive, conduct, or lead), 39
Conjugation, 29
  - of -ar verbs, 29–32
  - of -er verbs, 32–33
  - of -ir verbs, 33–34
  - of irregular verbs, 304–6
  - of regular verbs, 29–34, 300–301
  - of spelling-change verbs, 38–39, 303–4
  - of stem-changing verbs, 301–3
  - with two verbs in succession, 44
  - when larger verb form contains
    irregular verb, 42
Conjunctions, 214–17
Conocer (to know), 39
Consonants
  - in diphthongs, 4–5
  - pronunciation of, 5–9
Contact lenses, 169
Continents, 89
Contrary-to-fact conditions, 194
Contribuir (to contribute), 37
Cooking terms, 228
Countries, 87–89
Crecer (to grow), 39
¿Cuál(es)?, 147–49, 158–60
¿Cuándo? (when), 160
¿Cuánto(a)(s)? (how much, many), 145, 147, 148, 160
Cuyo(-a, -os, -as) (whose), 220

**D**
Dar (to give)
  - conjugation of, 304
  - idiomatic expressions using, 39–40
  - preterit of, 51
  - with una caminata, 175
Dates, 111–14
Days of the week, 13–14, 111
De (of, from, than), 91, 98
  - in comparisons, 204–6
  - before infinitives, 274
  - in questions and answers, 159–60
De + definite article, 202
De + noun, 237–38
De + verb, 238
¿De dónde?, 161
Deber (to have to), 122–23

Decimals, 108
Decir (to say, tell), 41, 304
Definite articles
  - with clothing or body part terms, 92
  - as demonstrative pronouns, 177
  - to express preferred color, 249
  - with geographical names, 87–88
  - neuter, 14–15
  - as noun markers, 13–15
  - omitting, 14
  - plural, 12
  - singular, 12
Demonstrative adjectives, 71
  - demonstrative pronouns vs., 176
  - as noun markers, 16
  - plural, 12
  - singular, 12
Demonstrative pronouns, 175–78
  - accent marks for, 176
  - definite articles as, 177
  - demonstrative adjectives, 176
  - gender of, 176
  - neuter forms of, 177
  - number of, 176
Denial, expressions of, 192
Dependent clauses
  - relative pronouns in, 217
  - tense of subjunctive in, 194
Descriptive adjectives, 71
Desde, questions containing, 43
Desear (to want), 96
Desserts, 230
Diaeresis, 3
Dietary restrictions, 231–32
Diphthongs, pronunciation of, 4–5
Direct object pronouns, 177, 179
  - to extend invitations, 183–84
  - placement of, 182
Direct objects, 179, 180
Direction(s)
  - asking questions for, 149–50
  - giving and receiving, 139–40
  - high-frequency verbs for, 136–37
  - and means of transportation, 137–38
  - prepositions showing, 138–39
Disbelief, expressions of, 192
Distance
  - demonstrative adjectives indicating, 16
with demonstrative pronouns, 176–77
measuring, 258
Doctor’s visits, 240–42
Doler (to hurt), 239
¿Dónde?, 160–61
Dormir (to sleep), 37
Double object pronouns, 182–83
Doubt
expressions of, 192–93
impersonal expressions of, 192–93
subjunctive after conjunctions for, 214
Dressing rooms, 247
Drinks, 229
Dry cleaners, seeking help at, 168
Dry measures, 222
-ducir verbs, 51

E
E, é (vowel), pronunciation of, 3–4
E-, words beginning with, 25
Eating establishments, 224, 230–32
-eer verbs, stem-changing, 302
Eggs, 228
El cual, 219
El (definite article), 12, 114
El que, 219, 220
Ellas (pronoun), 28
Emotions, 184–85
impersonal expressions of, 192–93
positive, 183–84
subjunctive after superlative for, 208
En (in, by, inside, within), 98, 100
to answer ¿Dónde? questions, 160–61
to express preferred color, 249
before infinitives, 274
with seasons and months, 112
Encantado, 83
Encontrar (to meet, find), 36
Encouragement, offering, 131, 141
Entertainment
leisure activities, 174–75
outdoor activities, 188–89
Enviar (to send), 38
Equality, comparisons of, 206–7
Equipment
repair of, 169
for sports, 189

-er verbs
conditional mood of, 63
conjugation of, 32–33
future tense of, 61
gerunds from, 44
imperfect of, 53–54
nosotros/vosotros endings for, 34
past participles of, 52–53
preterit of, 48
regular, 300
shoe verbs, 35–36
stem-changing, 126, 301
subjunctive of, 125
Es (it is), 115
Esa (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Esas (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Ese (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Eso (demonstrative pronoun), 177
Esos (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Esperar (to wait for), 100
¿Está bien?, 144
Esta (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Estar (to be)
with adjectives, 74–76
conjugation of, 41, 304
idiomatic expressions using, 41
Estas (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Este (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Esto (demonstrative pronoun), 177
Estos (demonstrative adjective), 12, 16
Etiquette, restaurant, 231
Events, 174–75
Exclamations, 213

F
Fabrics, 250
Fahrenheit, converting Centigrade and, 190
False friends, 24
Familiar commands, 135–36
Family, 90–91
Fax services, 271
Fear, expressing, 216
Feelings
positive, 183–84
subjunctive used with, 184–85, 208
Feminine, making ordinal numbers, 110
INDEX

Feminine adjectives, 68–70
Feminine nouns, 17–20
  endings for, 13, 19
  near perfect cognates of, 24
  perfect cognates of, 23
Files, business, 270
Films, 175–76
Finances. See Money
First floor, term for, 110
Fish, 226
Floor levels, terms for, 110
Flying standby, 255
Food, 222–32
  appetizers, 224
  cooking terms for, 228
desserts, 230
  and dietary restrictions, 231–32
  and eating establishments, 224
eggs, 228
fruits, 227
main meals, 225–26
nuts, 227
portions of, 223
quantities of, 222
  and restaurant dining, 230–32
salad, 226
seasonings, 228–29
soups, 225
Food stores, 121
Former, 177–78
Fowl, 225–26
Fruits, 227
Furniture, 120
Future perfect tense, 62–63
Future tense, 60–62
  of irregular verbs, 61–62
  of regular verbs, 60–61
  uses of, 62

G
G (consonant), pronunciation of, 6
Game (poultry), 225–26
  -gar verbs
    preterit of, 49
    spelling changes with, 303
Gender, 17–20
  of adjectives, 68–70
  of cardinal numbers, 109
  of comparative and superlative adjectives, 202
  of days, months, and seasons, 111
  of demonstrative pronouns, 176
  for groups of mixed-gender nouns, 21
  of nouns, 12
  of ordinal numbers, 110, 111
Geographical names, 14, 87–89
  -ger verbs, spelling changes with, 38, 303
Gerunds, 44–45
  irregular, 45
  object pronouns with, 182
  reflexive verbs with, 87
  -gir verbs, spelling changes with, 38, 303
Glasses, 169
Good-byes, 82–83
Gran, 73
Grande, 73
Greetings, 82–83
Ground floor, term for, 110
  -guir verbs, spelling changes with, 39, 303
Gustar (to please, to like), 180, 181

H
H (consonant), pronunciation of, 6
Haber (to have)
  future perfect of, 62–63
  imperfect of, 54
  past participles of, 52
  perfect conditional of, 64
  present tense of, 51
  preterit of, 53
Hablar (to speak)
  conditional mood of, 63
  conjugation of, 29–30
  future tense of, 60–61
Hace + que, 43
Hacer (to make, do)
  conjugation of, 304
  idiomatic expressions using, 40
  and infinitives, 251
Hair salon, seeking help at, 167–68
Hay que + infinitive (to be necessary to), 124, 149
Hay (there is/are or is/are there?), 149
Health problems, 239–40
Help, seeking, 166–71. See also Medical
needs
at the camera shop, 169–70
at the dry cleaner’s, 168
general questions for, 166
at the hair salon, 167–68
at the jeweler’s, 170
at the optician’s, 169
place names in, 166
at the post office, 166–67
for repairs, 168–69
for special services and needs, 171
Herbs, 228–29
Home. See House and home
Hotel accommodations and amenities,
212–13
House and home, 120, 121
"How long?", 241–42
Hypothetical situations, 194

I, í (vowel), pronunciation of, 4
-iar verbs
   in present subjunctive, 127
   shoe verbs, 37–38
   stem-changing, 302
Idioms, 39, 40, 140–41
   for age, 110
   definition of, 141
   reflexive verbs in, 85
   tener ganas de for, 96
   using estar, 41
Illness, 239–41
Imperfect subjunctive, 129–30, 194
Imperfect tense, 53–57
Impersonal expressions, subjunctive
   after, 192–94
Indecision, 104
Indefinite articles
   as noun markers, 15
   plural, 12
   singular, 12
Indicative, 192–94
   after superlative (to state a fact), 209
   conjunctions using, 216
   Indifference, expressing, 104, 191
   Indirect object pronouns, 178–81
   Indirect objects, 179
      form for you, 174
      placement of, 182–83
      verbs taking, 180–81
   Inequality, comparisons of, 199–206
   Infinitives, 29
      after conjunctions, 216–17
      comparing, 206
      following prepositions, 274–75
      and hacer, 251
      negating, 155
      object pronouns with, 182
      reflexive verbs with, 87
      of shoe verbs, 35
      with two verbs in succession, 44
      used as nouns, 14
   Information questions
      answering, 158–62
      asking, 145–49
   Injuries, 240
   Inns, 224
   Interrogative adjectives, 145–46
   Interrogative adverbs, 146–47, 160
   Interrogative pronouns, 147–49
   Intonation (in asking questions), 144
   Introductory conversations, 82–93
      discussing origins in, 87–89
      family member references in, 90–91
      greetings and good-byes in, 82–83
      questions about nationality in,
      89–90
      reflexive verbs used in, 83–87
      showing possession in, 91–93
   Inversion
      in asking questions, 144–45
      following interrogative adverbs, 146
   Invitations
      accepting, 103, 183–84
      declining, 191
      direct object pronoun with, 183–84
      extending, 97, 102–3, 183
      indecision and indifference with,
      104
      indifference to, 191
      refusing, 103–4
      verbs for, 96–97

313
Ir (to go), 45
  conjugation of, 41, 304
  imperfect of, 54
  irregular present tense of, 60
  preterit of, 51
Ir + a + definite article, 175
Ir + a + infinitive, 60
-ir verbs
  conditional mood of, 63
  conjugation of, 33–34
  future tense of, 61
  gerunds from, 44
  imperfect of, 53–54
  nosotros/vosotros endings for, 34
  past participles of, 52–53
  preterit of, 48
  regular, 300–301
  shoe verbs, 36–37
  stem-changing, 50, 127, 301–2
  stem-changing gerunds from, 44
  subjunctive of, 125
Irregular commands, 136–39
Irregular verbs
  commands with, 135
  conjugation of, 304–6
  future tense of, 61–62
  imperfect of, 54
  past participles of, 52–53
  present tense of, 39–42
  in preterit, 50–51
  in subjunctive, 127
  in yo form only, 39–40, 124–26
Las (definite article), 12
Las que, 219
Latter, 177–78
Le, 183
Leer (to read)
  conditional mood of, 63
  future tense of, 61
Leisure activities, 174–75. See also
  Outdoor activities
Les, 183
Limits, adjectives imposing, 71
Liquid measures, 222
Li (consonant), pronunciation of, 5, 7
Lo (definite article), 14–15, 178, 250
Lo + adjective (or adverb) + que (how), 15
Lo cual, 220
Lo que (what/that which), 220
Location
  adverbs showing, 16
  prepositions showing, 138–39
Los (definite article), 12
Los que, 219

M
Main floor, term for, 110
Main meals, 225–26
Mandar + hacer, 251
Más, 213
Masculine adjectives, 68–70
Masculine nouns, 17–20
  endings for, 13, 19
  near perfect cognates of, 23–24
  perfect cognates of, 23
Materials, clothing, 250
Mayor, placement of, 202
Me, 178
Meals, selecting, 225–26
Measurement(s)
  for clothing, 251
  of distances, 258
  dry and liquid, 222, 223
Meat, 225
Medical needs, 236–42
  and body parts, 238
  doctor's visits, 240–42
health problems, 239–40
at the pharmacy, 236–37
Medications, 236
Mejor, placement of, 202
Menor, placement of, 202
Metros, 115
Merecer (to deserve), 39
Metric system conversion chart, 245, 246
Millón, 109–10
Mirar, 175
Money
banking terms and expressions, 262–64
stock market terms, 264–65
Months of the year, 111, 112
Moods
conditional, 63–64
imperfect subjunctive, 129–30
perfect conditional, 64
perfect subjunctive, 130–31
pluperfect subjunctive, 130–31
present subjunctive, 124–29
subjunctive, 124
Movies, 175–76
Negation
of doubt, 192
expressing, 215
question inversions for, 145
Negative answers, 154–56
Negative commands, 135–36
Negative expressions, 156–58
Negative opinions, 191
Neuter forms
of definite articles, 14–15
of demonstrative pronouns, 177
of el que, 220
lo as, 250
New acquaintances, questioning, 150–51
Ni . . . ni construction, 155
Ninguno (not any), 156
¿No es verdad?, 144
No (not), 104–5
in negative answers, 154–56
with reflexive verbs, 105
Nos, 178
Nosotras (pronoun), 28
Noun markers, 12–16
adjectives as, 12, 16
articles as, 12–15
definite articles as, 13–15
demonstrative adjectives as, 16
indefinite articles as, 15
plural, 12
singular, 12
Nouns, 12–25
in apposition, 14
comparison of, 205–6
definite article with, 13
feminine, 17–20
gender endings for, 19–20
gender of, 12
gender-changing singular, 18–19
gender-obvious, 17–18
making plurals of, 20–22
masculine, 17–20
near perfect cognates of, 23–24
and noun markers, 12
number of, 12
perfect cognates of, 23
plural, 12
of quantity, 223
**INDEX**

Nouns, continued
  referring to groups of people, 22
  singular, 12
  subject, 28
  in superlative sentences, 202
Number (singular or plural)
  of comparative and superlative adjectives, 202
  of demonstrative pronouns, 176
  of nouns, 12
  of pronouns, 28
Numbers, 71
  cardinal, 108–10, 113
  ordinal, 110–11
  writing, 108
  writing date in, 113
Numerals, 14, 108
Nunca, 155
Nuts, 227

O
O, ó (vowel), pronunciation of, 4
Object pronouns, 178
  direct, 177, 179
  double, 182–83
  indirect, 178–81
  position of, 182–83
Objects of prepositions
  que as, 218
  quién as, 218–19
Obligations, expressing, 123–24
Ofrecer (to offer), 39
Oir (to hear), 41, 304
Opinions
  exclamations for, 213
  expressions of, 192–93
  negative, 191
  subjunctive after superlative for, 208
Opposites, 202–3
Optician, seeking help from, 169
Ordinal numbers, 110–11
Os, 178
Outdoor activities, 188–89. See also
  Leisure activities
  Outdoor eating stands, 224

P
Paella, 226
Para (for, to), 100, 147
Para + noun, 237–38
Para + verb, 238
¿Para qué?, 147
Participles
  past, 52–53
  perfect, 266
  present, 183, 265–66
Parts of the body, 13, 92, 238
Passive voice, 86, 260
Past participles
  of irregular verbs, 52–53
  of regular verbs, 52
Past tense (preterit)
  forming, 48–51
  imperfect vs., 54–57
Pastimes, 174–75
Patterns, fabric, 250
Pedir (to ask for), 100
Pensar (to think), 35
Peor, placement of, 202
Perdón, 152
Perdóneme, 152
Perfect cognates, 22–23
  of adjectives, 22
  of feminine nouns, 23
  of masculine nouns, 23
Perfect conditional mood, 64
Perfect participles, 266
Perfect subjunctive, 130–31, 194
Periods (in numbers), 108
Pero (but, however), 158
Person (of pronouns), 28
Personal a, 179
Personal hygiene items, 236–37
Persuasion, 131, 141, 192–93
Pharmacies, 236–37
Phone conversations, 162–64
Photocopying services, 270–71
Photographs, 169–70
Physical challenges, seeking help with, 171
Physical conditions, hay with, 149
Place names, 100, 166
  continents, 89
  countries, 87–89
Pluperfect subjunctive, 130–31, 194
Pluperfect tense, 54
Plurals
- of adjectives, 70–71
- with affirmative commands, 135
- noun markers, 12
- of nouns, 12, 13, 20–22
- of pronouns, 28
- of reflexive verbs, 86
Poder (to be able to, can), 45, 96, 304
Polite commands, 134–35
Poner (to put)
- conjugation of, 305
- irregular yo form of, 39
Por
- meanings of, 98–99
- for sending letters or packages, 167
¿Por qué? (why), 147, 161
Porque (because), 147
Positive comparisons, 199
- of adjectives, 200–203
- of adverbs, 203–5
Positive feelings, 183–84
Possession, 91–93
Possessive adjectives, 71, 91–93
Possessive pronouns, 93
Post office, seeking help at, 166–67
Preferir (to prefer), 36
Prepositional modifiers, 237
Prepositional pronouns, 101–2
Prepositions, 87, 97–100
- + qué, 148
- + quién, 148
- with indirect object pronouns, 179–80
- before infinitives, 274–75
- with interrogative adverbs, 147
- as modifiers, 237
- in negative expressions, 156
- objects of, 218–19
- preceding interrogative adjectives, 146
- in questions and answers, 162
- showing location and direction, 138–39
- to, for, and from, 181–82
Prescriptions, 236
Present participles, 183, 265–66
Present perfect tense, 51–53
Present progressive tense, 44–45
Present subjunctive, 124–29
- in dependent clauses, 194
- spelling changes in, 126
Present tense, 29–44
- of irregular verbs, 39–42
- of regular verbs, 29–39
- uses of, 43–44
Preterit. See Past tense
Preterit perfect tense, 53
Prices
- asking, 150
- clothing, 251
Primero, 111
Probability
- deber de + infinitive for, 123
- in the past, 64
- in the present, 62
- in the recent past, 63
- subjunctive in expressions of, 192
Producir (to produce), 39
Programs, television, 175–76
Pronouns, 28
- accents for, 183
- demonstrative, 175–78
- direct object, 177, 179
- double object, 182–83
- indirect object, 178–81
- interrogative, 147–49
- neuter form of, 177
- object, 178, 182–83
- placement of, 182
- plural, 28
- possessive, 93
- prepositional, 101–2
- reflexive, 83–83, 86–87, 139, 178
- relative, 217–20
- singular, 28
- subject, 28
Pronunciation, 2–9
- accents for, 2–3
- of consonants, 5–9
- of diphthongs, 4–5
- stress in, 2
- of vowels, 3–4
Proposals, making, 134
Public announcements, time expressions in, 117
Pubs, 224
Purpose
conjunctions expressing, 214–15
subjunctive after conjunctions for, 214

Q
Q (consonant), pronunciation of, 7
Quality, adjectives emphasizing, 71
Quantity
adjectives of, 72, 73, 222
adverbs of, 222
measures of, 222
nouns of, 223
Qué (that, which, who, whom, than), 218
in comparisons, 203–5
as object of preposition, 218
with subjunctive, 128
¿Qué? (which, what), 145, 148
answering, 161–62
answering questions with, 158–60
Qué + preposition, 148
Querer (to wish, want), 35, 96, 305
Questions
about dates, 114
about prices, 150
about something unknown, 177
about time, 114–17
answering. See Answering questions asked of new acquaintances, 150–51
for clarifying answers, 151–52
containing desde, 43
containing hace + que, 43
to get information, 145–49
for giving and receiving directions, 139–40, 149–50
for help in stores, 122
"How long?", 241–42
intonation in, 144
inversion in, 144–45
prepositions in answers and, 162
when seeking help, 166
yes/no, 144–45
Quién (whom), 218–19
Quién + preposition, 148
¿Quién (es)? (who, whom), 147, 148, 161

R
R (consonant), pronunciation of, 8
Reciprocal action, 86
Reconocer (to recognize), 39
Reducir (to reduce), 39
Reflexive pronouns, 83–83, 86–87, 178
placement of, 182
with reflexive verbs, 139
Reflexive verbs
choosing correct, 85–86
commands with, 139
in compound tenses, 86–87
with infinitives and gerunds, 87
in introductory conversations, 83–87
no with, 105
question inversions with, 145
with subjunctive, 185
Refusal, expressing, 103–4
Regionalisms, 22
Regular verbs
-ar verbs, 29–32
conjugation of, 29–34
-er verbs, 32–33
future tense of, 60–61
imperfect of, 53–54
-ir verbs, 33–34
past participles of, 52
polite commands with, 134–35
present tense of, 29–39
preterit of, 48
shoe verbs, 35
subjunctive of, 125
Relationship, expressions of, 93–94
Relative adjectives, 220
Relative clauses, 217
Relative pronouns, 217–20
el cual, 219
el que, 219
lo que (lo cual), 220
que, 218
quién, 218–19
Renting cars, 256
Repairs, 168–69
Restaurants, 224, 230–32
animals in, 212
and dietary restrictions, 231–32
etiquette for, 231
problems in, 232
table settings in, 230
Rice, 226
Rooms, hotel, 212–13

S
Saber (to know a fact, to know how to)
conjugation of, 305
irregular yo form of, 39
Salad, 226
Sales, clothing, 251
Salir (to go out, to leave)
conjugation of, 305
irregular yo form of, 39
San, 74
Santo, 74
School expressions and terms, 198–99
Se, 178, 183
Seafood, 226
Seasonings, food, 228–29
Seasons, 14, 111, 112
Seguir (to follow or continue), 39
Señora, 83
Señorita, 83
Sentirse (ie) (to feel), 84, 241
Ser (to be)
with adjectives, 74–76
conjugation of, 41, 305
imperfect of, 54
preterit of, 51
Servir (to serve), 37
Shoe repairs, 168
Shoe sizes, 246
Shoe verbs, 35–38
Sí, 101
Sí clause, 194
Singular
noun markers for, 12
of nouns, 12
of pronouns, 28
Sino (but), 158
Sizes, clothing, 245–46
Son, 115
Soups, 225
Special needs, seeking help for, 171
Spelling changes
in present subjunctive, 126
with verbs, 303–4. See also
Shoe verbs
Spices, 228–29
Sports, 188–89
Standby, flying, 255
Stationery supplies, 270
Stem-changing verbs. See also Shoe verbs
conjugation of, 301–3
gerunds from, 44–45
in present subjunctive, 126–27
in preterit, 50
Stock market, 264–65
Stores
departments in, 245
getting help in, 122
types of, 121
Stress
accent marks for, 3
in pronunciation, 2
when making nouns plural, 21
Subject(s)
of commands, 134
names of academic, 199
nouns as, 28
pronouns as, 28, 135
in question inversions, 145
with subjunctive, 129
verb forms with, 29
Subjunctive
after conjunctions, 214–17
after impersonal expressions,
192–94
after superlatives, 208–9
avoiding, 129
conditions for using, 124
conjunctions using, 216
to express emotions and feelings,
184–85
in expressing doubt, denial, disbelief,
and probability, 192
imperfect, 129–30, 194
perfect, 130–31, 194
pluperfect, 130–31, 194
present, 124–29, 194
reflexive verbs with, 185
of regular verbs, 125
in relative clauses, 217
sequence of tenses of, 194

319
Subjunctive, continued
   in third person commands, 214
   verbs irregular in, 127
Suggestions, making, 174
Superlative(s), 199–200
   absolute, 207–8
   of adjectives, 200–203
   of adverbs, 203–5
   expressions of, 208
   of nouns, 205–6
   subjunctive after, 208–9

T
Table settings, 230
Tan, 213
Tan + adjective or adverb + como
   (as . . . as), 206
Tanto(-a, -os, -as) + noun + como
   (as much/many . . . as), 206–7
Tapas bars, 224
Te, 178
Telephone conversations, 162–64
Television, 175–76
Telling time, 114–17
Temperature, 190
Tener (to have)
   conjugation of, 42, 96, 305
   to express health problems, 239
   idioms using, 42
   and personal a, 179
Tener ganas de (to feel like), 96
Tener que, 123–24
Tengo . . . años, 110
Tenses. See also Moods; specific tenses
   compound, reflexive verbs in, 86–87
   conditional, 194
   future, 60–62
   future perfect, 62–63
   imperfect, 53–57
   pluperfect, 54
   present, 29–44
   present perfect, 51–53
   present progressive, 44–45
   preterit, 48–51, 54–57
   preterit perfect, 53
   of the subjunctive, 194
Tercero, 111
Third person commands, 214
Tilte, 3
Time
   conjunctions expressing, 214
   of day, definite article with, 13
   telling, 114–17. See also Tenses
Titles (of rank or profession), 13
“To” forms. See also Tenses
Traducir (to translate), 39
Traer (to bring)
   conjugation of, 305
   irregular yo form of, 39
Traffic accidents, 259
Traffic lights, 258
Train travel, 256
Transportation, 137–38
Travel
   by airplane, 254–55
   by car, 256–59
   hotel accommodations and amenities, 212–13
   by train, 256
Tú (pronoun), 28

U
U, ú (vowel), pronunciation of, 4
   -uar verbs
      in present subjunctive, 127
      shoe verbs, 37–38
      stem-changing, 303
Ud. (usted), 28
Uds. (ustedes), 28
   -uir verbs
      preterit of, 48
      shoe verbs, 37
      stem-changing, 302
Un (indefinite article), 12, 109
Una (indefinite article), 12, 109
Unas (indefinite article), 12
Uncertainty
   expressions of, 192
   subjunctive after conjunctions for, 214
Unknowns, asking about, 177
Uno (indefinite article), 12, 109
Unos (indefinite article), 12
Usted (Ud.), 28
Ustedes (Uds.), 28

V
V (consonant), pronunciation of, 8
Vegetables, 226–27
Venir (to come), 43, 306
Ver (to see)
  conjugation of, 306
  imperfect of, 54
  irregular, 304–6
  irregular in subjunctive, 127
  irregular in yo form only, 124–26
Verbs. See also Infinitives
  for certain activities, 175
  for commands, 136–37
  comparison of, 206
  conjugation of, 29, 300–306
  for invitations, 96–97
  irregular, 304–6
  irregular in subjunctive, 127
  moods of. See Moods
  with nouns referring to groups, 22
  object pronouns and agreement of, 179
  perfect participles of, 266
  as present participles, 266
  present participles with, 265–66
  reflexive, 83–87
  regular, 300–301
  shoe verbs, 35–38
  spelling-change, 303–4
  stem-changing, 301–3
  taking direct objects, 180
  taking indirect objects, 180–81
  tense of. See Tenses
  of wishing and wanting, 128
Voices, passive and active, 86, 260
Volver (to return, go back), 36
Vosotras (pronoun), 28
Vosotros (pronoun), 28
Vowels
  in diphthongs, 4–5
  pronunciation of, 3–4

W
W (consonant), pronunciation of, 6
Wanting, 128
Weather, 149, 190–91
Wines, 229
Wishing, 128
Wonder
  in the past, 64
  in the present, 62

X
X (consonant), pronunciation of, 8

Y
Y (and)
  in expressions of time, 115
  in numbers, 109
Years, 113
Yes, answering, 154
Yes/no questions, asking, 144–45
Yo (pronoun), 28
“You’re welcome,” 103

Z
Z (consonant), pronunciation of, 9
-zar verbs
  preterit of, 49
  spelling changes with, 304
About the Author

Gail Stein has an M.A. in French literature from New York University and has taught French and Spanish in New York City public junior and senior high schools for more than thirty-three years. She has authored numerous text and trade books in both languages. Mrs. Stein has also assisted in a revision project of the French curriculum for the New York City Board of Education and has served as an adjunct professor to St. John’s University in its Early Admission Extension Program. She has given presentations and demonstration lessons at numerous foreign language conferences and has had her lessons videotaped by the New York City Board of Education for national distribution. Mrs. Stein has been recognized in the 2000 and 2002 editions of Who’s Who Among America’s Teachers.